

# Conservation Management Strategy

Bay of Plenty 2020, Volume I

Draft for public notification



## Conservation Management Strategy

Bay of Plenty 2020, Volume I

Cover Image: Ohope Spit view from Onekawa. *Photo: Neil Hutton Photography*

ISBN 978-0-473-55273-2 (print)

ISBN 978-0-473-55274-9 (online)

© December 2020, New Zealand Department of Conservation



Crown copyright © 2020

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International licence. In essence, you are free to copy, distribute and adapt the work, as long as you attribute the work to the Crown and abide by the other licence terms. To view a copy of this licence, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/>.

Please note that no departmental or governmental emblem, logo or Coat of Arms may be used in any way which infringes any provision of the Flags, Emblems, and Names Protection Act 1981. Attribution to the Crown should be in written form and not by reproduction of any such emblem, logo or Coat of Arms. Use the wording 'Department of Conservation' in your attribution, not the Department of Conservation logo.

This publication is produced using paper sourced from well-managed, renewable and legally logged forests.

# Contents

CMS structure and navigation	1	<b>Part Two – Places</b>	<b>52</b>
Long-term vision for the Bay of Plenty region	2	4 Kaimai Mamaku Place	55
Director’s foreword	3	5 Waiariki Place	68
Recognising te ao Māori – the Māori world view	4	6 Whirinaki Surrounds Place	80
Introduction	6	7 Eastern Catchments Place	91
The Bay of Plenty Conservation Management Strategy	6	8 Coastal and Marine Place	101
Purpose of a CMS	6	9 Te Mauri o te Wai Place	116
Relationship with legislation and other statutory documents	7	<b>Part Three – Regional policy requirements for the Bay of Plenty region</b>	<b>130</b>
Relationship with the Department’s other planning processes	8	<b>10 Regional policy requirements</b>	<b>131</b>
Interpretation	10	10.1 General regional policies	131
<b>Part One – Regional overview</b>	<b>12</b>	10.2 Aircraft	133
<b>1 The Bay of Plenty region</b>	<b>13</b>	10.3 Beehives	138
<b>2 Treaty of Waitangi relationships</b>	<b>16</b>	10.4 Commercial filming and photography, and sporting and other competitive events	138
2.1 Treaty settlements (as at CMS notification)	17	10.5 Fishing and game bird hunting	139
2.2 Treaty claims yet to be finalised or negotiated (as at CMS notification)	27	10.6 Fixed anchors	140
2.3 Objective and policies for Treaty of Waitangi relationships	28	10.7 Grazing and farming	141
<b>3 3. National and regional objectives, policies and milestones</b>	<b>31</b>	10.8 Marine mammal viewing	142
3.1 Natural values	31	10.9 Mining	142
3.2 Historic values	36	10.10 Private accommodation	143
3.3 Recreation values	40	10.11 Sand and shingle extraction	144
3.4 Engagement	44	10.12 Structures, utilities and facilities	144
3.5 Regional milestones	48	10.13 Vehicles and other means of transport	145
		10.14 Animals	152
		10.15 Wild and game animals	155
		<b>Part Four – Implementing this CMS</b>	<b>156</b>
		<b>Glossary</b>	<b>160</b>

<b>VOL.</b>	<b>PART</b>	<b>SECTION</b>	<b>CONTENT</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>One</b>	<b>Regional overview</b> Overview and vision Treaty of Waitangi relationships National and regional objectives Regional milestones	<b>Overarching objectives, policies and milestones for the region</b> 3.1 Natural values 3.2 Historic values 3.3 Recreation values 3.4 Engagement 3.5 Regional milestones
	<b>Two</b>	<b>Places</b> Kaimai Mamaku Waiariki Whirinaki Surrounds Eastern Catchments Coastal and Marine Te Mauri o te Wai	<b>Outcomes, policies and milestones for Places within the region</b> Contains descriptions of the values, issues and opportunities at each Place, as well as the desired future outcomes and actions (policies) to be taken to achieve those outcomes. Also contains major milestones to monitor progress towards achieving those outcomes.
	<b>Three</b>	Regional policy requirements	<b>Further authorisation policies for the region</b> Presents policies that apply to decision-making on activities across the entire region and implement the Conservation General Policy 2005 and other legislative requirements.
	<b>Four</b>	Implementation, monitoring & reporting	<b>A framework</b> Outlines a framework by which the Department of Conservation and the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board can implement, monitor and report on progress towards achieving the outcomes and objectives of this CMS.
	<b>Glossary</b>	Definitions	Defines words and phrases used in this CMS.
<b>2</b>	<b>Appendices</b>	Further information	Provide further information about the values, opportunities, threats and management approaches referred to in Volume I.
<b>3</b>	<b>Maps &amp; inventory</b>	Maps	Contains maps and an inventory of public conservation lands and waters, which identifies and describes all protected areas managed by the Department within the boundaries of this CMS in accordance with section 17D(7) of the Conservation Act 1987.

Note: All provisions (including milestones) in Parts One and Two of Volume I need to be read in conjunction with one another, as many are interconnected. Often, the provisions in Part One address the issues and opportunities identified in Part Two. If there is inconsistency between provisions in Parts One and Two, the more specific provisions in Part Two apply.





Arohaki Lagoon Track, Whirinaki. *Photo: Neil Hutton Photography*

## Long-term vision for the Bay of Plenty region

Manaki whenua, manaki tangata, haere whakamua.  
Care for the land, care for the people, go forward.





## Director's foreword

Kia ora tātou.

Welcome to the draft Bay of Plenty Conservation Management Strategy (CMS), which sets our aspirations for the region over the next 10 years. This document has been prepared by the Department of Conservation and written in collaboration with our Treaty partners, the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board and key stakeholders. Their input, enthusiasm and active engagement have been crucial for the development of this first revision of the CMS, which will help direct the future of conservation in the Bay of Plenty.

Te Kaupapa a Te Papa Atawhai, the Department's organisational strategy, aims to place our Treaty partnership at the heart of our mahi/work. It ensures we are strategically led across the entire organisation, emphasises relationship building and new ways of working alongside others, and sets our relationship with iwi as the backbone of conservation work in the region. Amongst other concepts, Te Kaupapa focuses on whakawhanaungatanga / building relationships and whakaauaha/innovation, both of which flow through this draft CMS and are reflected in the outcomes that aim to create healthy nature and thriving communities. This draft CMS sets a benchmark for plans and strategies of the future by integrating tikanga/ values such as mātauranga taiao / traditional environmental knowledge, reciprocity, kaitiakitanga/guardianship and departmental knowledge.

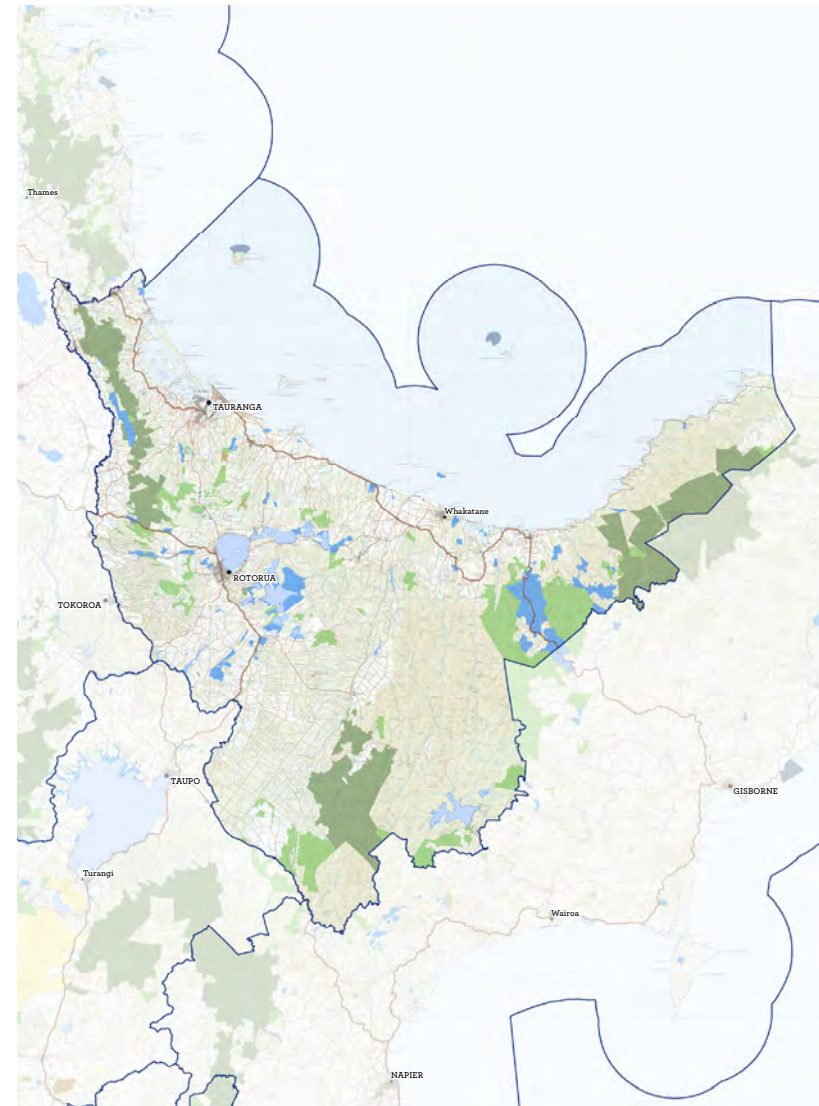
This draft document also reflects the views and aspirations of the community, as well as our partners and stakeholders with conservation interests in the Bay of Plenty. It integrates national and local conservation priorities for the region and identifies desired outcomes for places that are special to tangata whenua and communities.

As with our organisational strategy, the major themes identified in this CMS are engagement and partnership with tangata whenua, halting the decline of and restoring indigenous biodiversity, leadership and advocacy in marine and freshwater ecosystems, balancing recreational and tourism pressures across the Bay of Plenty, and continuing to work closely with others to deliver conservation outcomes.

Public participation is the next important step in the process, and we look forward to hearing your views through the submission process. We also welcome those who wish to be heard in support of their submissions.

**Damian Coutts**

Director, Operations, Central North Island



## Recognising te ao Māori – the Māori world view

Te ao Māori is a vital viewpoint in the Bay of Plenty landscape. Generations of tangata whenua have been an integral part of the natural world, forming an interwoven relationship with te taiao / the environment.

The collective understanding and ways of knowing of these generations is preserved through mātauranga Māori / traditional knowledge, which is unique to Aotearoa New Zealand. Mātauranga is a complete indigenous scientific knowledge system, drawn from the relationship Māori have with all natural environments. This can also take a more detailed form as mātauranga-a-iwi / specific tribal knowledge, mātauranga-a-hapū / specific subtribal knowledge or mātauranga-a-whanau / specific family knowledge.

Values such as mauri / life force, whakapapa/genealogy, tapu/sacred and kaitiakitanga/guardianship are fundamental to the Māori relationship with te taiao and intrinsically linked to form te ao Māori.

**Mauri** can be understood as the life force or life essence of all things. Everything has a mauri and it plays a crucial role in the interconnectedness and ordering of elements within whakapapa.

**Tapu** can be described as the sacred relationship with te taiao in the way in which whakapapa links to natural features such as rivers, lakes and mountains.

**Kaitiakitanga** is a spiritual and environmental ethos that governs tangata whenua responsibilities for the care and protection of mauri, the dynamic life principle that underpins all heritage. It includes components of protection, guardianship, stewardship and customary use, and is exercised by tangata whenua in relation to ancestral lands, water, sites, resources and other taonga/treasures.

### How the Department recognises te ao Māori

The Department recognises iwi as Treaty partners, acknowledging their roles as tangata whenua and kaitiaki/guardians and their holistic world view. Effective relationships and partnerships with tangata whenua are based on the principles of Tiritiri o Waitangi / the Treaty of Waitangi and will be a key contributor to achieving the conservation of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage. Relationships with tangata whenua vary and take a unique form with each iwi or hapū, or with respect to individual places, species or resources.

Carrying out customary use practices and retaining mātauranga enables tangata whenua to maintain and sustain their culture and identity. In many cases, animal and plant taonga only remain on public conservation land. Iwi may also choose to develop their own environmental plans to express how they exercise kaitiakitanga and to guide how Government agencies and others should work with them in regard to their environment.

### Waka hourua – the double-hulled canoe

Waka hourua was a traditional vessel used by the first settlers who arrived in Aotearoa.

In the context of the Bay of Plenty Conservation Management Strategy, this concept can be interpreted as two interconnected canoes moving as one and symbolises how the Department will recognise, collaborate and build stronger relationships with Treaty partners. It outlines the key values of te ao Māori and the Department's conservation aspirations. Like the waka hourua, the Department views its relationship with iwi as a collaborative partnership moving towards the same destination and supporting one another along the way.



### **Hiwitahi (first hull)**

The first hull represents our Treaty partners and te ao Māori. Iwi are kaitiaki in te taiao and draw upon mātauranga to achieve shared conservation outcomes. This mātauranga can differ between places within the region, having unique connections to the natural features of each rohe / tribal area.

### **Hiwirua (second hull)**

The second hull represents the Department's aspirations for conservation in the region and its willingness to collaborate and work in partnership with Treaty partners.

### **Aku (cross boards)**

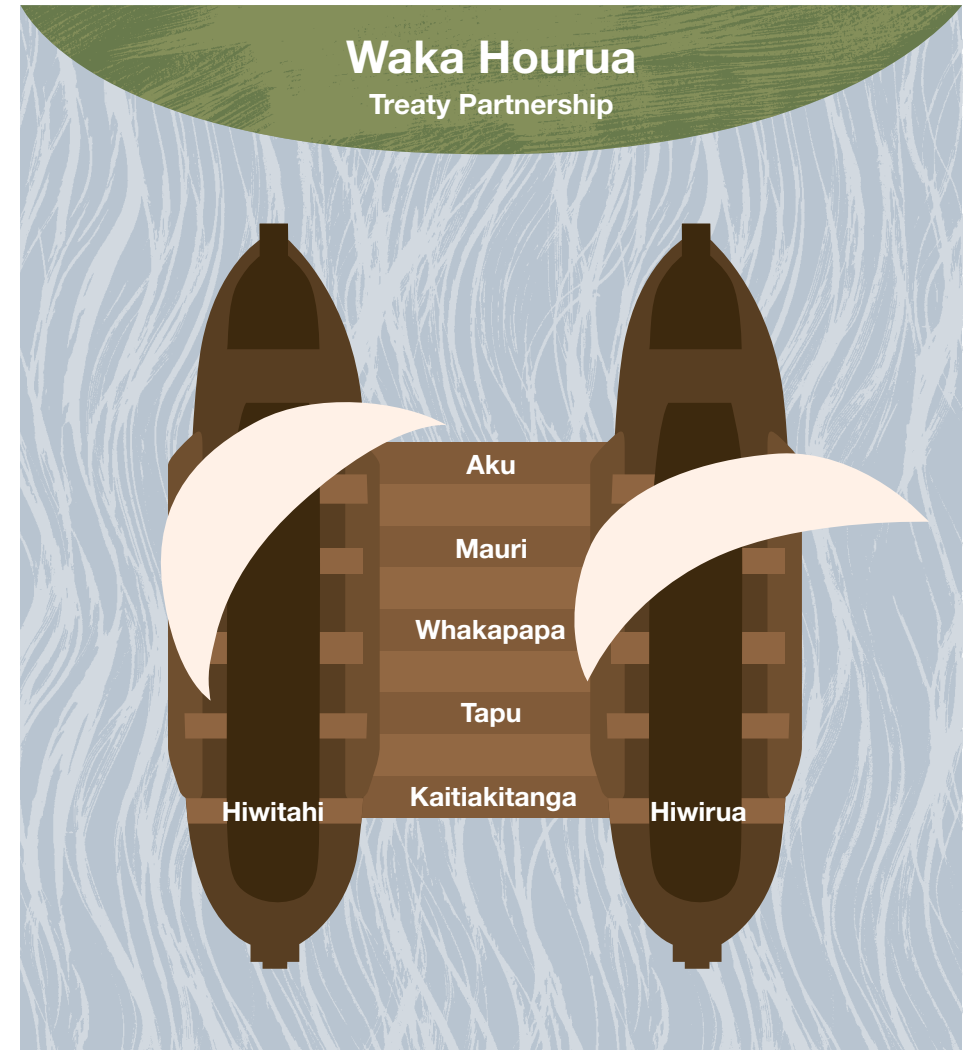
The aku are the cross boards that connect the two hulls and lay the foundation for the mast and steering paddle. They represent the structural foundation of partnership and collaboration.

### **Herenga (lashings)**

The herenga bind the cross boards that make the waka and represent the values of the Department and our Treaty partners that make our partnership and relationship stronger and so need to be shared and recognised to achieve our conservation aspirations. These values include mauri, whakapapa, tapu and kaitiakitanga.

### **Hoe urungi (steering guide)**

The direction of our waka hourua is steered by understanding and effectively implementing the Treaty principles.



# Introduction

## The Bay of Plenty Conservation Management Strategy

The Bay of Plenty region stretches from Waihi in the west to Cape Runaway in the east, and from the Mohaka River beyond Rotorua in the south to 12 nautical miles into the moana/sea to the north. Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) marine reserves are located off the east coast, along with several offshore islands, including Motuotau Island and Karewa Island.

Heavily forested ranges and conservation parks, freshwater and wetland ecosystems, and the geothermal features of the Rotorua lakes, Kawerau and the surrounding reserve network all provide unique features in an area that is as diverse in species as it is in people, groups and communities. The relationships people have with these ecosystems affect the way they value, use and interact with public conservation lands and waters.

The Bay of Plenty Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) describes the conservation values and issues for the region and how the Department of Conservation intends to manage these. It recognises Treaty partnerships and the role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki/guardians in the region, both on and off public conservation lands and waters.

The CMS is also the community's document. The Department is supported in its work through long-established and newly evolving relationships with volunteers, community groups, private landowners, regional councils and territorial authorities, businesses, and the public.<sup>1</sup>

Conservation benefits all New Zealanders and, therefore, is of interest to many. To meet the challenge of the long-term vision for the region, the Department needs to continue to grow conservation by working effectively with Treaty partners and conservation stakeholders.

## Purpose of a CMS

The purpose of a CMS is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including species managed by the Department, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes. Integrated management is described in the Conservation General Policy 2005.<sup>2</sup>

Conservation, as defined in the Conservation Act 1987, is the 'preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations'. A CMS is not an operational plan, although it does provide direction on managing conservation values and issues at an operational level.



Grey warbler, Moutohorā Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

<sup>1</sup> For the purposes of this document, regional councils and territorial authorities, private landowners, community groups and the public are all considered 'conservation stakeholders'.

<sup>2</sup> Department of Conservation 2005: Conservation General Policy. Department of Conservation, Wellington. 69 p.  
[www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf)



### Relationship with legislation and other statutory documents

CMSs form part of a suite of legislation and documents that provide the planning framework for all conservation lands and waters in New Zealand (see Figure 1). The Department must administer and manage the public conservation lands and waters in each region in accordance with this legislation and policy. These documents also guide the Department when it is advocating for the protection of conservation values beyond public conservation lands and waters.

At the top of the hierarchy is the Conservation Act, beneath which lies the Conservation General Policy 2005 followed by the CMSs and conservation management plans. Lower level documents cannot be inconsistent with documents above them in the hierarchy. Conservation management plans contain the detailed objectives for a particular area when required by Treaty settlement(s) or where there are complex issues. If Part One (Places) or Part Three (Regional policy requirements) of this CMS differ from an operative conservation management plan, the conservation management plan is given precedence because it is the more specific planning document for the particular area.

The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River – Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato,<sup>3</sup> as recorded in the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 and the Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, has the status of being a statement of Conservation General Policy. The CMS must not derogate or be inconsistent with the vision and strategy of the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010.

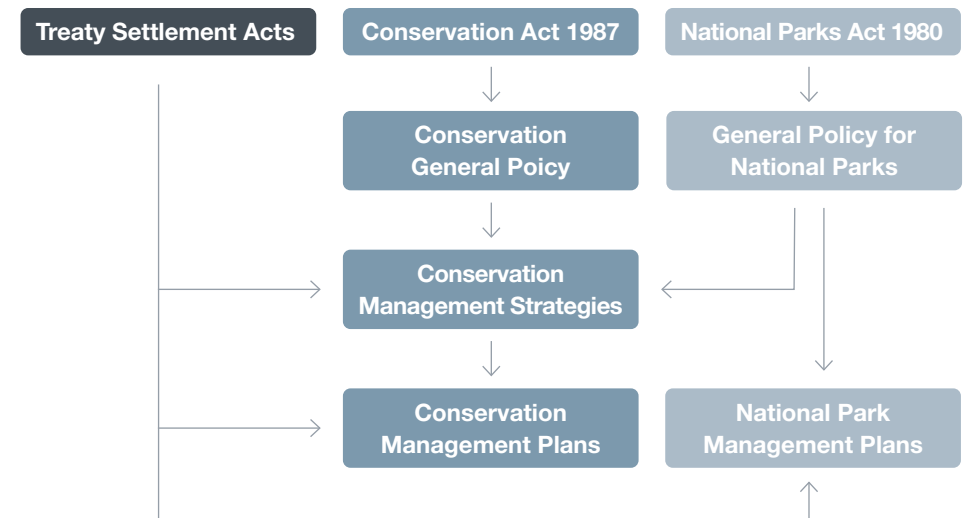


Figure 1: Statutory framework for managing public conservation lands and waters.

<sup>3</sup> Waikato River Authority n.d.: Restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River. Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River. Waikato River Authority, Hamilton. 10 p. [www.waikatoriver.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/Vision-and-Strategy-Reprint-2019web.pdf](http://www.waikatoriver.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/Vision-and-Strategy-Reprint-2019web.pdf)

<sup>4</sup> Te Tapatoru ā Toi (Joint Management Committee) 2008: Te Tāpui Tokotoru Conservation Management Plan. Department of Conservation, Wellington. 35 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf)

<sup>5</sup> Department of Conservation; Te Runanga o Ngāti Whare 2017: Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Management Plan. Department of Conservation, Wellington. 112 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/policies-and-plans/conservation-management/whirinaki-te-pua-a-tane-cmp.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/policies-and-plans/conservation-management/whirinaki-te-pua-a-tane-cmp.pdf)

There are currently two operative conservation management plans in the Bay of Plenty region – Te Tāpui Tokotoru Conservation Management Plan 2008<sup>4</sup> and Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Management Plan 2017<sup>5</sup>. These will remain in place until reviewed or replaced.

Other legislation under which the Minister of Conservation has a role or that is of relevance to this CMS includes the Wildlife Act 1953, Marine Reserves Act 1971, Protected Objects Act 1975, Reserves Act 1977, Wild Animal Control Act 1977, Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, Crown Minerals Act 1991, Electricity Act 1992, Walking Access Act 2008, Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011, Freedom Camping Act 2011, Game Animal Council Act 2013, and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.

The approach taken in this CMS is to not restate the provisions of legislation or other documents. Therefore, this CMS needs to be read in conjunction with these. Departmental policy documents can be found at [www.doc.govt.nz](http://www.doc.govt.nz) and New Zealand legislation can be found at [www.legislation.govt.nz](http://www.legislation.govt.nz).

Activities undertaken on public conservation lands and waters need to comply with regional and district plans prepared under the Resource Management Act 1991, unless an exemption has been granted pursuant to section 4(3) of that Act or they are allowed for in provisions in Treaty settlements. The Department is also bound by 'good neighbour' rules in regional pest management plans prepared under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

## Relationship with the Department's other planning processes

**Conservation legislation** – This primarily includes the Conservation Act 1987, National Parks Act 1980 and Reserves Act 1977, which set out the purpose of statutory management planning documents, the processes for preparing and approving these documents, and what these documents should contain. Other conservation legislation includes the Wildlife Act 1953, Marine Reserves Act 1971, Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.

**Treaty settlement legislation** – This may include provisions that require management planning documents to recognise/include specific information about sites of significance or other significant values. It may also require the preparation of a conservation management plan or strategy (in whole or in part).

**General policies** – These include the Conservation General Policy 2005 (prepared under the Conservation Act 1987 and approved by the Minister of Conservation) and the General Policy for National Parks 2005<sup>6</sup> (prepared under the National Parks Act 1980 and approved by the New Zealand Conservation Authority). These policies outline what statutory management planning documents should address and provide guidance for managing conservation values both on and off public conservation lands and waters.

**Statutory management planning documents** – These include CMSs, national park management plans and conservation management plans, all of which must be consistent with conservation legislation and general policy. These documents contain outcomes for places, objectives, policies and milestones to guide the Department's work over a 10-year time frame for a region, national park or other area (e.g. a reserve). The way in which they interact with other planning processes is shown in Figure 2.

---

<sup>6</sup> New Zealand Conservation Authority 2005: General Policy for National Parks. Department of Conservation, Wellington. 76 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/general-policy-for-national-parks.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/general-policy-for-national-parks.pdf)

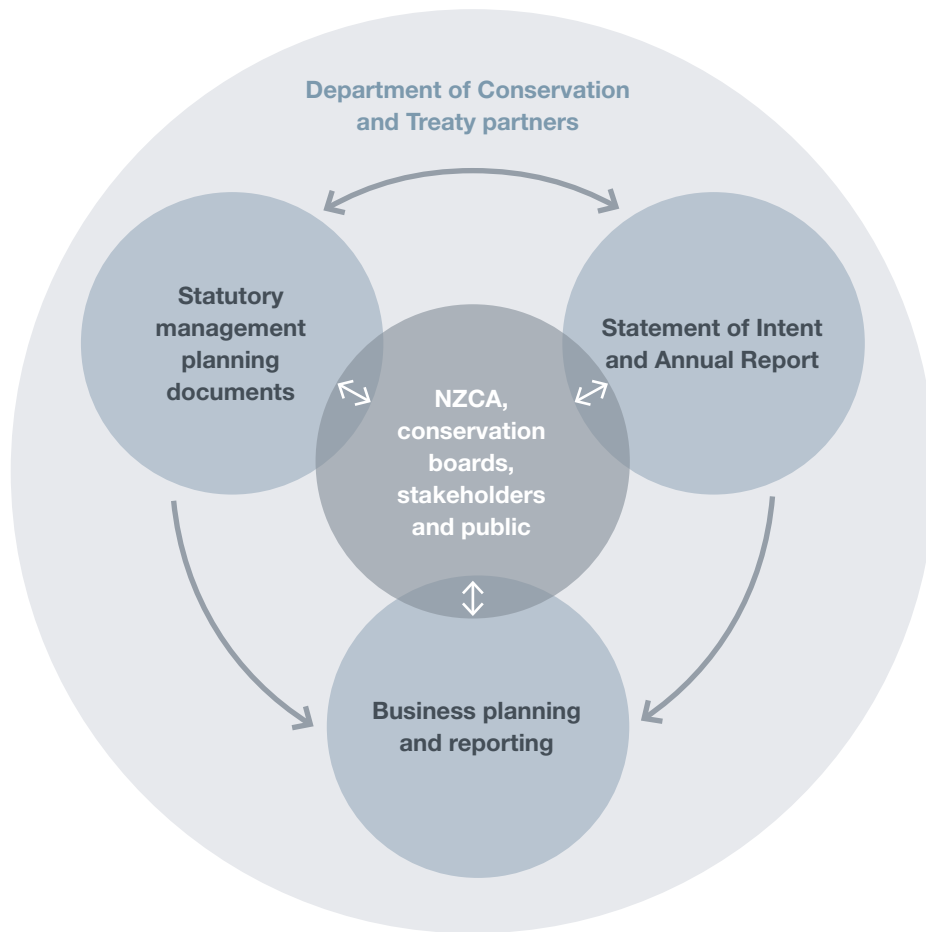


Figure 2: Relationship between statutory management planning and the Department's other planning processes..

**Statement of Intent (SOI)** – The SOI is prepared under the Public Finance Act 1989 and contains the Department’s vision (50+-year time frame) and purpose; four intermediate outcomes (50-year time frame) and associated objectives for natural values, historic values, recreation and engagement (25-year time frame); and eight stretch goals (2025). The statutory management planning documents refer and directly link to these.

**Annual report** – This is prepared under the Public Finance Act 1989 and reports on the Department’s operations and key performance indicators for achieving the vision, outcomes and goals presented in the SOI.

**Business planning and reporting** – This includes annual work plans, budgets and performance reporting, and identifies the delivery of outputs to achieve the Department’s intermediate outcomes and stretch goals as outlined in the SOI, as well as provisions in statutory management planning documents.

**New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA), conservation boards, iwi and the public** – These groups inform the Department about the conservation work they want achieved through consultation processes for preparing general policies, statutory management planning documents and the SOI. The Department delivers monitoring reports to the NZCA and conservation boards on achieving the outcomes and milestones in statutory management planning documents and to iwi and the public through other mechanisms, such as the annual report.

Milestones within this CMS provide a link between the policy direction it sets out and business planning and outline measurable steps against which the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board will monitor and report on its implementation.

An outcome focus is adopted throughout this CMS, with provisions indicating where the Department’s work with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders can deliver outcomes rather than identifying individual partners or projects – this level of detail is addressed at a local operational level and supported through the business planning process.



# Interpretation

**Objectives** describe what the Department wants to achieve across the region. They support national directions and community aspirations to achieve integrated conservation management and guide decision-making.

**Outcomes** describe the future state of a Place, including its values, and reflect the expected changes at that Place over the term of the CMS. They guide conservation management and decision-making at each Place.

**Policies** provide detailed guidance on how an objective and/or outcome can be achieved. They describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used for conservation management and decision-making.

**Values** are Place-specific features that the Department wants to protect and enhance. The values link to the outcomes the Department is trying to achieve at each Place.

**Issues** are activities or actions undertaken at a Place that are causing or could cause conflict with the values of the Place.

**Opportunities** are activities or actions that are helping or could help to enhance or protect the values of the Place.

**Milestones** are specific measurable steps to achieve the objectives, outcomes and vision for the region. They enable the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board to monitor and report on CMS implementation. Milestones are described in the past tense and written as if preceded by the words 'the Department has ...'. The CMS includes both Place-based (Part Two) and region-wide (Part One) milestones. There is no hierarchy between these.

## CMS interpretation policies

1. Give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi when interpreting the objectives, outcomes, policies and glossary in this CMS.
2. Give legal effect to the objectives, outcomes, policies and glossary in this CMS.
3. Apply the objectives and policies in Part One to all lands, waters and resources managed by the Department in the region.
4. Apply the outcomes and policies for each Place in Part Two to all lands, waters and resources managed by the Department in that Place.
5. Give precedence to the outcomes and policies in Part Two where these differ from the objectives or policies in Part One.
6. Interpret the words 'will', 'should' and 'may' in the policies such that:
  - a) 'will' is used where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or where a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers;
  - b) 'should' is used where there is a strong expectation of the decision that will be made by the decision-maker, and a departure from this requires the decision-maker to be satisfied that exceptional circumstances exist; and
  - c) 'may' is used where there is an intention to allow flexibility in decision-making.
7. Give precedence to conservation management plans where these differ from Part Two (Places) or Part Three (Regional policy requirements) of this CMS.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>7</sup> At the time of approval of this CMS, there were two approved conservation management plans: one for the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park and one for the Moutohorā (Whale Island) Wildlife Management Reserve, Ohope Scenic Reserve and Tauwhare Pa Scenic Reserve. These are addressed in sections 6: Whirinaki Surrounds Place and 8: Coastal and Marine Place of this CMS.



# Part One – Regional overview

# 1. The Bay of Plenty region

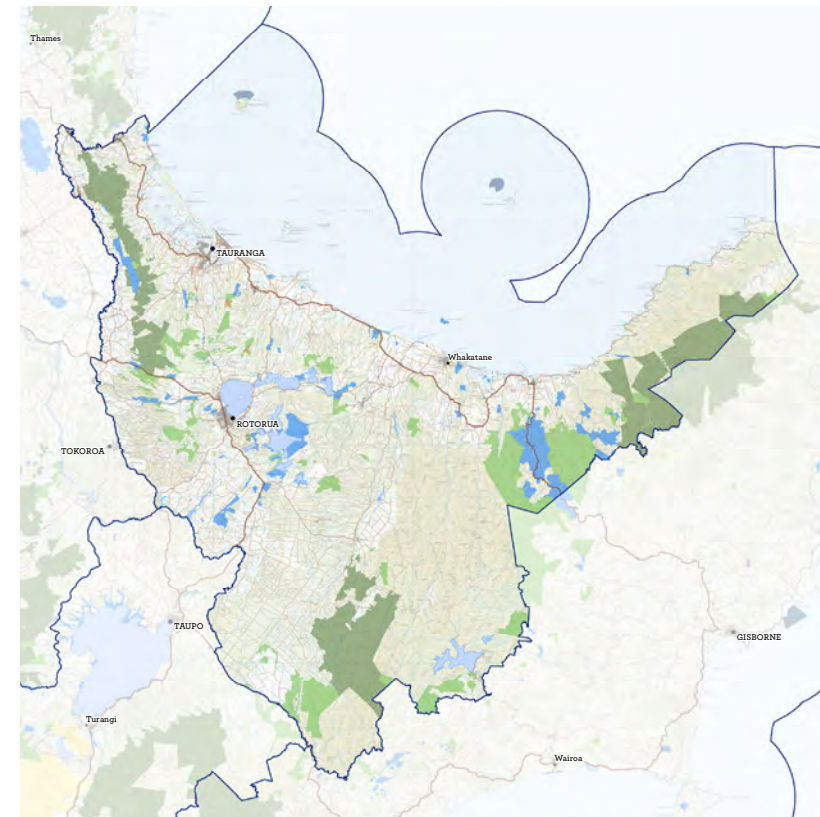
The objectives and policies in Part One of this CMS apply to all public conservation lands, waters and resources in the Bay of Plenty region, which extends beyond the Bay of Plenty Regional Council boundaries and covers marine areas out to the 12-nautical mile limit with respect to coastal and marine issues and the 200-nautical mile limit with respect to protected species (see Figure 3).

The Bay of Plenty is a complex and diverse region that is rich in history. It is a central hub of Māori settlement, benefitting from an intertwined cultural landscape that includes more than 40 rohe / tribal areas. Key population centres include Tauranga / Mount Maunganui and Whakatāne, adjacent to the white sandy beaches of the east coast; Rotorua, set amongst the great Te Arawa lakes; and several satellite townships and rural communities. The region offers its 250 000+ residents a range of unique, scenic, rugged and remote landscapes to live, work and recreate in.

Distinctive features include native ngahere/forests, such as those in the Kaimai and Raukūmara ranges; major awa/rivers and streams, including the Rangitaiki, Tarawera and Mōtū rivers; great roto/lakes, such as the Te Arawa lakes around Rotorua; important wetlands and dunelands; renowned geothermal areas, such as Waiotapu, Waimangu and Te Kopia; unique frost flats high on the Central Plateau; a diverse marine environment, including two marine reserves at Mayor Island (Tuhua) and Te Paepae o Aotea (Paepae te Hawaiki); iconic pest-free islands, such as Mayor Island (Tuhua) and Moutohora Island; and a rich cultural heritage that is central to the region's identity.

The diversity, complexities and richness of the Bay of Plenty CMS area are clear, ranging from the many mountains, volcanoes, podocarp ngahere and hinterlands through to the freshwater tributaries, geothermal features, frost flats, roto and freshwater systems, and the mangroves, estuaries, saltmarshes, harbours and the great Pacific Ocean.

However, in many cases, the terrestrial, freshwater and coastal species and ecosystems that provide this richness and diversity are under threat, with some having reached critical states and being in crisis. To preserve the natural biodiversity values of the Bay of Plenty for future generations, there is an urgent requirement to halt this decline.



Area covered by the Bay of Plenty CMS

## Climate change

New Zealand's climate is changing due to increased greenhouse gas emissions and is likely to continue to do so over the coming decades, matching global trends. These changes are having significant known effects on New Zealand's natural and cultural heritage and outdoor recreation resources.

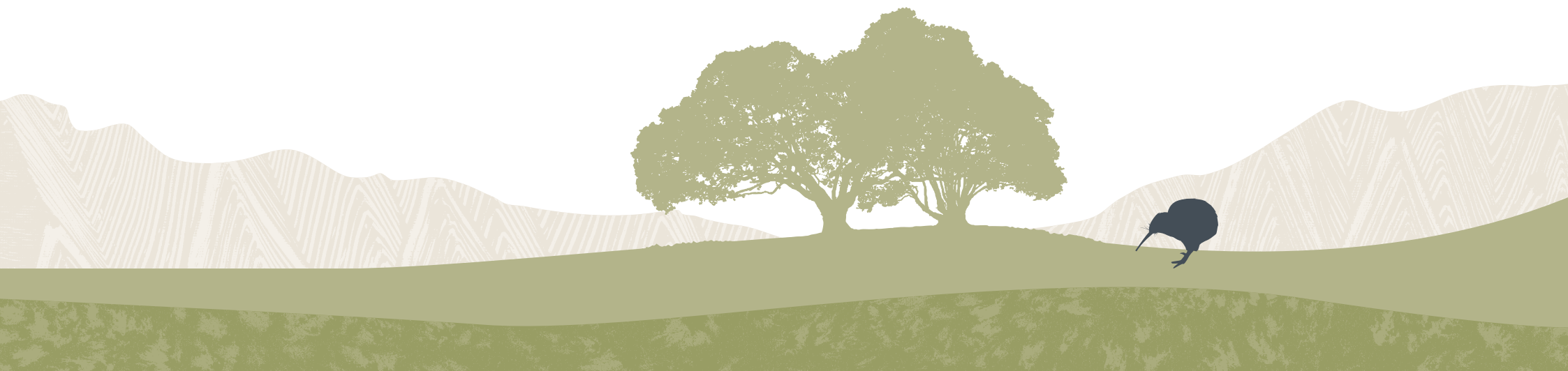
Regardless of our present and future efforts to limit greenhouse gas emissions from our activities, we are likely to experience ongoing physical impacts related to climate change.

The predicted rate and effects of climate change will depend on the pace at which global emissions can be reduced. Under current 'business as usual' projections, it is estimated that by 2090, the Bay of Plenty region will experience (see Figure 4):

- a 0.5 to 1 m rise in sea level;
- 10 to 59 extra days per year when maximum temperatures exceed 25°C;
- up to 15 fewer frosts per year; and
- variable rainfall and some increases in storm and ex-tropical cyclone intensities.

These changes are likely to result in:

- heavy rainfall events, which could lead to surface flooding, river flooding and hill country erosion events becoming more frequent;
- coastal roads and infrastructure being at increased risk from coastal erosion and inundations, an increased frequency of storm events, and sea level rise;
- more frequent, more intense and longer droughts, leading to water shortages and increasing the risk of wildfires;
- higher lake levels, on average, in western and central parts of New Zealand, and lower lake levels in some eastern areas, such as the Rotorua lakes;
- warmer water temperatures, which could lead to more algal blooms, a reduced range of trout and the spread of pest species such as carp; and
- warmer and wetter conditions, increasing the risk of invasive pests and weeds.





Climate change is likely to be a significant driver of conservation management over the next 30 years. Domestic and international travel and activity on public conservation lands and waters generate greenhouse gas emissions, while activities such as planting native ngahere and restoring wetlands reduce emissions, enhance carbon sequestration and improve resilience, helping New Zealand to stay within its biophysical limits.

The Department intends to contribute to New Zealand’s national mitigation target, deliver on greenhouse gas reduction policies and transition towards a low-carbon economy. This requires engagement with tangata whenua and communities to incorporate their values and knowledge. It is imperative that climate change is considered in decisions about the future of the Bay of Plenty.

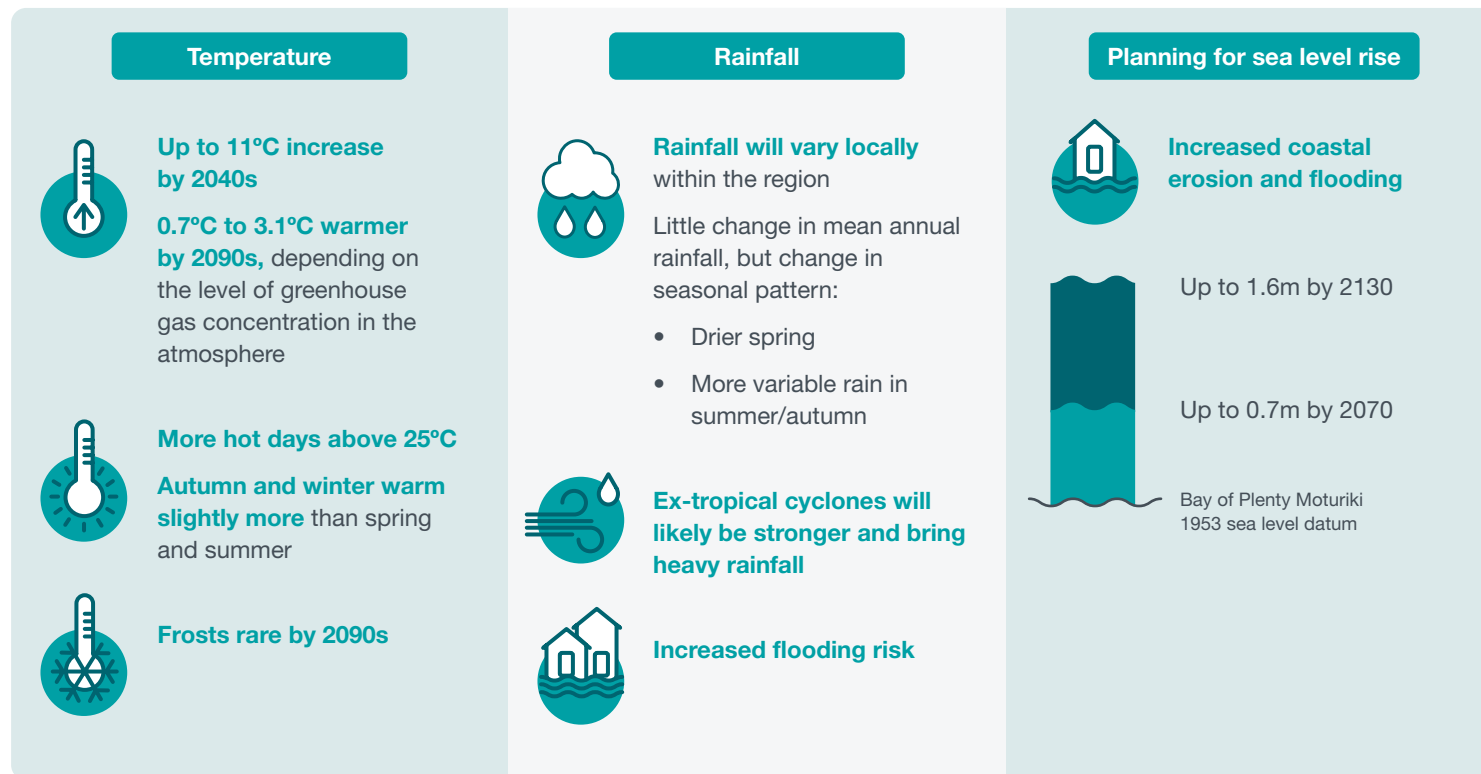


Figure 4: Likely climate change impacts for the Bay of Plenty.



Rangi Raki volunteering with Kiwis for kiwi in Te Teko, Bay of Plenty. Photo: Sabine Bernert

## 2. Treaty of Waitangi relationships

### Whānau, hapū and iwi are our Treaty partner

The Department acknowledges tangata whenua as kaitiaki/guardians and recognises their special relationship with the whenua/land and resources within the Bay of Plenty. The region contains significant cultural and ancestral significance to tangata whenua, with many special sites that comprise part of the public conservation lands and waters. The Department works in partnership with tangata whenua to recognise and integrate tikanga/values such as mātauranga taiao / traditional environmental knowledge, reciprocity and kaitiakitanga/guardianship in the management of public conservation lands and waters.

The Conservation Act 1987 and all other Acts listed in its first schedule must be interpreted and administered to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Conservation Act 1987: section 4). At the time of development of this draft CMS, a partial review of the Conservation General Policy 2005 and General Policy for National Parks 2005 is ongoing, which is exclusively focused on improving the way in which section 4 is reflected in these general policies. The Department will continue to engage with tangata whenua throughout this partial review process. When complete, any change in wording or approach in the Conservation General Policy is likely to be included in this CMS through technical amendment and partial review processes.

The Department is committed to recognising tangata whenua who are at various stages of the Treaty settlement process. In addition to section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987, completed settlements guide the ongoing relationships between the Department and settled claimant groups. The respective Deeds of Settlement and Settlement Acts provide further opportunity for the Crown, Post Settlement Governance Entities (PSGEs) and tangata whenua to work together to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi within the region, and the provisions of these settlements need to be considered in the ongoing management and implementation of this CMS.



Maori Sculpture, Lake Tarawera. Photo: Crave Photography

## 2.1 Treaty settlements (as at CMS notification)

### 2.1.1 Central North Island Forests Iwi Collective

The Central North Island Forests Iwi Collective (the Collective) is made up of Ngāi Tūhoe, Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Ngāti Whakaue, Ngāti Whare, Ngāti Manawa, Ngāti Rangitahi, Raukawa and an affiliate grouping Te Pumautanga O Te Arawa. The Collective has interests that span a major proportion of the central North Island, and this settlement relates to 176 000 ha of central North Island forest land, including Horohoro, Whakarewarewa, Crater and Kaingaroa forests. These sites were vested as Collective forests and ceased to be Crown forest land.

### 2.1.2 Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki

The rohe of Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki is centred in Tāmaki Makaurau / Auckland and extends to Hauraki/Coromandel, particularly encompassing the coastline, harbours and motu/islands of Waitematā Harbour and the Hauraki Gulf / Tikapa Moana.

The Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki Claims Settlement Act 2018 recognises the cultural and spiritual association of Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki with places and sites owned by the Crown within the tribe's primary area of interest. This allows Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki and the Crown to protect and enhance the conservation values associated with significant sites.

It also provides for the vesting of 16 Crown-owned sites in Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki and five Deeds of Recognition. None of these sites fall within the Bay of Plenty CMS area. Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki will enter a Relationship Agreement with the Minister for Conservation outlining how the Crown will work and engage with Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki in matters of conservation.

Also see section 2.1.21: Pare Hauraki.



### 2.1.3 Ngāi Te Rangī and Ngā Pōtiki

The Ngāi Te Rangī and Ngā Pōtiki area of interest is based in and centred around Tauranga and Mount Maunganui. It stretches south as far as Maketu and north to Waihi, including Mōtītī Island and Mayor Island (Tuhua), and the Kaimai Range.

The Ngāi Te Rangī and Ngā Pōtiki Deed of Settlement 2013 provides for various cultural and historically significant sites to be vested in Ngāi Te Rangī and Ngā Pōtiki. At the time of writing this CMS, the Ngāi Te Rangī and Ngā Pōtiki Claims Settlement Bill has not yet been enacted.

Also see section 2.1.23: Tauranga Moana Iwi Collective.

### 2.1.4 Ngāi Tūhoe

The Ngāi Tūhoe area of interest is based around Te Urewera, which has its own legislation, Te Kawa o Te Urewera,<sup>8</sup> and exists as its own legal identity governed by Ngāi Tūhoe and Crown nominees. The legislation recognises and provides for cultural values associated with Te Urewera and includes key principles in relation to the protection of biodiversity, natural and historic heritage, public input into management, and public access into the future.

The identity is represented by a Governance Board, which acts in the interests of Te Urewera itself and was responsible for approving Te Kawa o Te Urewera. This legislation invites an inter-generational outlook to introduce new practice that uses principle-based responsibility and management to acknowledge the admiration and respect of Ngāi Tūhoe for Te Urewera.

The Ngāi Tūhoe Deed of Settlement 2013 provides for the vesting of a number of sites of cultural and historical significance in Ngāi Tūhoe, and the Crown/Tūhoe Relationship Agreement, Nā Kōrero Ranatira ā Tūhoe me Te Karauna, which was signed in 2011, provides a foundation for how Tūhoe and the Crown (including the Department) will work together.

---

<sup>8</sup> [www.ngaituhoe.iwi.nz/te-kawa-o-te-urewera](http://www.ngaituhoe.iwi.nz/te-kawa-o-te-urewera)

<sup>9</sup> Te Tapatoru ā Toi (Joint Management Committee) 2008: Te Tāpui Tokotoru Conservation Management Plan 2008–2018. Department of Conservation, Rotorua. 35 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf)

### 2.1.5 Ngāti Awa

The Ngāti Awa area of interest centres around Whakatāne, extending along the Bay of Plenty coastline from Maketu in the west to Ōhiwa Harbour in the east.

The Ngāti Awa Claims Settlement Act 2005 provides for the vesting of seven areas of special significance to Ngāti Awa and four Deeds of Recognition, including Deeds of Recognition over Crown-owned parts of the Whakatāne, Rangitaiki and Tarawera riverbeds and Uretara Island.

Two joint committees, one advisory and one management, were established over five reserves. Te Tatau Pounamu o Te Awa o Te Atua – the Joint Advisory Committee provided advice to the Department regarding Matata Scenic Reserve and Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve and reflects the connection between Ngāti Awa, Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) the community and the Department. Te Tapatoru ā Toi (the Joint Management Committee) has specific delegated functions relating to Moutohora (Whale) Island Wildlife Management Reserve, Tauwhare Pa Scenic Reserve and Ohope Scenic Reserve, which together are known as Te Tāpui Tokotoru. To help achieve the purpose of the Ngāti Awa Claims Settlement Act 2005, the Te Tāpui Tokotoru Conservation Management Plan<sup>9</sup> was developed to provide the management framework for these three reserves.

The Deed of Settlement also established a protocol between Ngāti Awa and the Department to promote good working relationships on matters of cultural importance to Ngāti Awa.

### 2.1.6 Ngāti Hauā

The Ngāti Hauā area of interest stretches from Te Aroha, south along the Kaimai Range to Te Weraiti and then west to Maungatautari, northwest to Te Rapa, and east to Mangateparu and Te Aroha.

The Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014 vested a number of sites in Ngāti Hauā. The settlement also provides for the Department and Ngāti Hauā to enter into a Relationship Agreement that outlines how the parties will cooperate to fulfil agreed strategic objectives and provides a framework to foster a positive, collaborative and enduring relationship.

### 2.1.7 Ngāti Hinerangi

Ngāti Hinerangi is an iwi based in Matamata that has an area of interest extending from the eastern Waikato to Tauranga, including part of the Kaimai Range.

The Ngāti Hinerangi Deed of Settlement 2019 provides for the vesting of a number of sites in Ngāti Hinerangi and Deeds of Recognition for part of the Maurihiro Scenic Reserve and Waianuanu (part of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park and Gordon Park Scenic Reserve).

The Deed of Settlement also provides for an overlay classification that recognises the traditional, cultural, spiritual and historical association of Ngāti Hinerangi with parts of the Maurihiro Scenic Reserve, Wairere Falls Scenic Reserve, Gordon Park Scenic Reserve and Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, as well as a Relationship Agreement between Ngāti Hinerangi and the Department that outlines how they will engage with each other.

### 2.1.8 Ngāti Hineuru

The Ngāti Hineuru area of interest is based northwest of Napier in the Hawke's Bay region, particularly in the Mohaka–Waikare area, and extends to the Waipunga Forest and the southern part of the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park.

The Ngāti Hineuru Settlement Act 2015 provides for several sites of cultural and historical significance to be vested in Ngāti Hineuru, including the vesting and gifting back of the Waipunga Falls Scenic Reserve. It also provides for a number of Deeds of Recognition, including over the Kokomoka and Waipunga forests and the Mohaka, Rangitaiki and Waipunga rivers and their tributaries.

An overlay classification, known as Te Korowai o te Hā, is provided for over a part of the Waipunga Falls Scenic Reserve. This requires the New Zealand Conservation Authority and Bay of Plenty Conservation Board to have regard to it and to consult with Ngāti Hineuru before approving the Bay of Plenty CMS.

The Crown and Ngāti Hineuru also entered into a Relationship Agreement, which sets out a framework to enable positive and enduring working relationships between the Department and Ngāti Hineuru.

### 2.1.9 Ngāti Mākino

The Ngāti Mākino area of interest extends from Lakes Rotoiti/Te Roto kite ā Ihenga i ariki ai Kahu and Rotomā in Rotorua eastwards to the Bay of Plenty coast. The Ngāti Mākino Claims Settlement Act 2012 provides for several sites of special significance to be vested in Ngāti Mākino, along with a Deed of Recognition over part of the Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve, in recognition of the traditional, historical, cultural and spiritual associations of Ngāti Mākino with this area.

A whenua rāhui / overlay classification is also provided for over part of the Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve. This requires the New Zealand Conservation Authority and Bay of Plenty Conservation Board to have regard to it and to consult with Ngāti Mākino prior to approving the Bay of Plenty CMS.

### **2.1.10 Ngāti Manawa**

Ngāti Manawa is a central North Island iwi based in Murupara with strong customary associations over a large geographical area that includes the Kaingaroa Forest and the upper Rangitaiki River. Its area of interest is bounded by the Ikawhenua Range to the east, the Taupō–Napier highway to the south, the western edge of the Kaingaroa plains to the west and the southern edge of Rerewhakaaitu to the north.

The Ngāti Manawa Claims Settlement Act 2012 provides for the vesting of several sites of special significance in Ngāti Manawa, with an additional four sites vested jointly in Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Manawa and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Whare. The Act provides for Deeds of Recognition for Pukehinau and Te Kōhua in Te Urewera. Deeds of Recognition are made between Ngāti Manawa and the Crown in relation to two sites, and a whenua rāhui, to be known as Ahikāroa, will apply to Tawhiauau, which is a maunga/mountain located in Te Urewera.

Deeds of Recognition are also made over the Rangitaiki, Horomanga, Wheao and Whirinaki rivers. The settlement provides a framework for reaching agreement on a management system for the Rangitaiki River and its tributaries (the Rangitāiki River Forum).

The Act also provides for a relationship protocol between Ngāti Manawa and the Minister of Conservation, setting out how the Department will interact with the Ngāti Manawa Governance Entity.

### **2.1.11 Ngāti Pāhauwera**

Ngāti Pāhauwera is a confederation of hapū with historical interests in northern Hawke’s Bay. Its core area of interest stretches from the Ohinepaka Stream to the Waikari River and inland from these areas towards the Maungaharuru Range.

The Ngāti Pāhauwera Treaty Claims Settlement Act 2012 provides for the transfer and gifting back of a number of sites to Ngāti Pāhauwera.

The Act also provides for a Co-management Charter, which sets out how the Department and Ngāti Pāhauwera will establish and maintain a positive and enduring partnership for conservation activities that are largely within the Ngāti Pāhauwera core area of interest.

### **2.1.12 Ngāti Porou**

The Ngāti Porou area of interest is located around the East Cape and extends from Potikirua Point to Gisborne Harbour.

The Ngati Porou Claims Settlement Act 2012 provides for several sites of cultural and historical significance to be vested in Ngāti Porou. It also provides for a strategic partnership that sees the Department and Ngāti Porou jointly developing a separate section of the East Coast Hawke’s Bay Conservation Management Strategy to be known as Ngā Whakahaere Takirua mō Ngā Paanga Whenua o Ngāti Porou. This arrangement provides Ngāti Porou with input into the strategic governance of specified public conservation lands and waters within its area of interest, including the Raukūmara Range. Since part of the Raukūmara Range is managed by this CMS, the Department intends to manage it consistently with Ngā Whakahaere Takirua mō Ngā Paanga Whenua o Ngāti Porou.

The Deed of Settlement also provides for a protocol between Ngāti Porou and the Department to facilitate good working relationships. In addition, the Crown and Ngāti Porou committed to develop an enhanced relationship through an accord that will be established to address contemporary issues within the Ngāti Porou rohe.

### **2.1.13 Ngāti Pūkenga**

Today, Ngāti Pūkenga is dispersed across four small and scattered kāinga/settlements located in Tauranga, Maketu, Whangārei and Hauraki.

The Ngāti Pūkenga Claims Settlement Act 2017 provides for four sites to be vested in Ngāti Pūkenga, among which Otanewainuku and Puwhenua are jointly vested with five other iwi.

### **2.1.14 Ngāti Ranginui**

Ngā Hapū o Ngāti Ranginui is an iwi based in the Tauranga region that has an area of interest extending from Ngakuriawharei, north of Tauranga, inland to the summit of Te Aroha. It then extends southeast along the Kaimai Range to Puwhenua and south to the Mangorewa River, from where the boundary continues northeast to Otanewainuku and coastal Wairakei. This area also includes Mount Maunganui (Mauao).

The Ngāti Ranginui Deed of Settlement 2012 provides for a number of sites to be vested in Ngāti Ranginui and a formalised role for Ngāti Ranginui to control and manage the Margaret Jackson Wildlife Management Reserve. The Deed also includes a Relationship Agreement with the Department.

Also see section 2.1.21: Pare Hauraki.

### **2.1.15 Ngāti Rangiteaorere**

The Ngāti Rangiteaorere area of interest is located on the eastern shores of Lake Rotorua/Te Rotorua nui ā Kahumatamomoe and on Mokoia Island.

The Ngāti Rangiteaorere Settlement Act 2014 provides for three sites of cultural and historical significance to be vested in Ngāti Rangiteaorere and Deeds of Recognition for the Lake Rotorua and Waiohewa Stream marginal strips (see Part Two for details of the other sites).

The Act also provides for a relationship protocol with the Department to facilitate a good working relationship.

### **2.1.16 Ngāti Rangiwewehi**

Ngāti Rangiwewehi is an iwi of the Te Arawa waka that has an area of interest based in the Rotorua area, beginning on the northwestern side of Lake Rotorua/Te Rotorua nui ā Kahumatamomoe and including the Mangorewa Kaharoa and Maraeroa Oturoa blocks. Together with other iwi, Ngāti Rangiwewehi also occupied Mokoia Island, land southwest of Lake Rotorua and the hill country around Otanewainuku.

The Ngāti Rangiwewehi Claims Settlement Act 2014 provides for sites and Deeds of Recognition, including part of the Taumata Scenic Reserve, part of the Ruato Stream Conservation Area, the Mangorewa Scenic Reserve, parts of the Mangorewa Conservation and Ecological Areas, part of the Kaharoa Conservation Forest, part of Te Matai Conservation Forest, part of the Mangapapa Ecological Area, Te Waeranga Scenic Reserve and the Mangapouri Stream Marginal Strip.

The Department and Ngāti Rangiwewehi have joined into a Relationship Agreement committing to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the rohe for present and future generations.

### 2.1.17 Ngāti Tūwharetoa

The Ngāti Tūwharetoa area of interest is centred on Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) and the Central Plateau and covers most of the central North Island and Te Arawa regions.

The Ngāti Tūwharetoa Claims Settlement Act 2018 provides for the vesting of several sites in Ngāti Tūwharetoa. In addition, Ngāti Tūwharetoa and the Department formalised their relationship by establishing a framework to enable a positive and enduring working relationship to be maintained.

The Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 gave effect to Deeds of Settlement entered into between the Crown and those iwi and sets out the establishment and participation of each iwi in co-management of the Waikato River. The Deed of Settlement established co-governance and co-management arrangements over the river, with an overarching purpose to restore and protect its health and wellbeing for future generations.

The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River – Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato<sup>10</sup> is a statement of Conservation General Policy, so this CMS must not derogate or be inconsistent with this. An integrated river management plan for the upper Waikato River is provided for.

Particular regard must also be given to environmental plans prepared by Trusts under this Act, such as the Ngāti Tūwharetoa Environmental Iwi Management Plan 2003.<sup>11</sup>

Appendix 13 outlines the Vision and Strategy and demonstrates how this CMS implements the Department's responsibilities to achieve it.

### 2.1.18 Ngāti Rangitihi

The Ngāti Rangitihi area of interest stretches inland from Maketu to the inland lakes of the Rotorua District, including Lake Tarawera, and the summits of Wahanga Peak, Ruawahia Peak and Mount Tarawera.

The Ngāti Rangitihi Deed of Settlement signed on 9 July 2020 provides a number of sites to be vested in Ngāti Rangitihi and Deeds of Recognition over part of the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve, all Crown-retained parts of Crater Block Crown Land, the Tarawera Cut Wildlife Management Reserve and Crown-owned areas of the Tarawera River.

The Deed of Settlement also offers Ngāti Rangitihi membership on the existing Joint Advisory Committee for the Matata Scenic Reserve and Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve and provides for the establishment of a Tarawera Awa Restoration Strategy Group that will operate as a permanent joint committee of the Bay of Plenty Regional Council. A Relationship Agreement is also included to foster a good working relationship between Ngāti Rangitihi and the Department.

---

<sup>10</sup> [waikatoriver.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/Vision-and-Strategy-Reprint-2019web.pdf](http://waikatoriver.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/Vision-and-Strategy-Reprint-2019web.pdf)

<sup>11</sup> Ngāti Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board 2002: Ngāti Tūwharetoa Environmental Iwi Management Plan 2003. Ngāti Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board, Turangi. 64 p. [www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/assets/PageFiles/21886/Ngati\\_Tuwharetoa\\_Iwi\\_Environmental\\_Management\\_Plan\\_2003.pdf](http://www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/assets/PageFiles/21886/Ngati_Tuwharetoa_Iwi_Environmental_Management_Plan_2003.pdf)

### 2.1.19 Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty)

Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty), also known as Tuwharetoa ki Kawerau, is from the Kawerau and Matatā area.

The Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) Claims Settlement Act 2005 provides Deeds of Recognition, including over the beds of the Tarawera and Rangitaiki rivers (see Part Two for details of the other sites).

The Act also provides for a special statutory acknowledgement over geothermal water and geothermal energy located in the Kawerau Geothermal System. A whenua rāhui acknowledges the traditional, cultural, spiritual and historic values and association of Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) with the Parimahana Scenic Reserve. The New Zealand Conservation Authority and relevant conservation boards are required to have regard to the principles and consult with Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) on the management of this reserve.

In addition, a Joint Advisory Committee has been established over the Matata Scenic Reserve and Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve that provides for the exchange of advice and management of these areas. A Department of Conservation Protocol was agreed between the Department and Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty), which sets out a framework to enable the establishment of a healthy and constructive working relationship between these parties that is consistent with section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987.

### 2.1.20 Ngāti Whare

The Ngāti Whare area of interest is based around Te Whaiti, Minginui and the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park.

The Ngāti Whare Claims Settlement Act 2012 provides for the vesting of culturally significant sites in Ngāti Whare, the return of wāhi tapu / sacred sites, and the joint vesting of sites in Ngāti Whare and Ngāti Manawa (see Part Two for details).

The Act also provides a Deed of Recognition in relation to specified and discrete areas of Te Urewera on the eastern boundary of the area of interest and the Whirinaki River and its tributaries.

A Conservation Accord has been signed by the Minister of Conservation and Ngāti Whare to address conservation issues within the Accord Area. This provides for Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Whare to have meaningful input into relevant policy, planning and decision-making processes, enabling the Department and Ngāti Whare to establish constructive working relationships.

The settlement provides for Ngāti Whare and the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board to have a joint governance role through the development and joint approval of a conservation management plan for the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park. It also provides for the establishment of a joint Crown / Ngāti Whare Trust, which seeks to restore and enhance the mana/prestige of both the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park and Ngāti Whare.

The settlement also provides a framework for the Rangitaiki River and its tributaries (the Rangitāiki River Forum).

In approving a CMS that is relevant to the Rangitaiki River, the New Zealand Conservation Authority must have particular regard to any vision, objectives and desired outcomes contained in the Rangitāiki River document Te Ara Whānui o Rangitāiki Pathways of the Rangitāiki<sup>12</sup> (see Part Two for details). The Bay of Plenty Conservation Board and New Zealand Conservation Authority must also have regard to the spiritual, historical and cultural significance of the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park to Ngāti Whare when considering this CMS.

### **2.1.21 Pare Hauraki**

Pare Hauraki represents the collective interests of 12 iwi in the Hauraki region, namely Ngāti Hako, Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Maru, Ngāti Paoa, Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki, Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngāti Rāhiri Tumutumu, Ngāti Tamaterā, Ngāti Tara Tokanui, Ngaati Whanaunga and Te Patukirikiri.

The Pare Hauraki Collective Redress Deed provides for the establishment of the Pare Hauraki Collective Cultural Entity to represent iwi of Hauraki in relation to natural resource matters.

The Deed also provides for a conservation framework with the Department to establish an effective partnership that recognises both the mana whenua / territorial rights and kaitiakitanga responsibilities of the iwi of Hauraki and enhances the conservation of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage in their rohe. This framework includes a decision-making framework and a Relationship Agreement with the Department.

### **2.1.22 Tapuika**

The Tapuika area of interest is based between Papamoa and Maketu, specifically from Wairakei in the west to Little Waihi in the east and inland to Kaharoa.

The Tapuika Claims Settlement Act 2014 establishes a framework for co-governance of the Kaituna River (Te Maru o Kaituna River Authority) and for the vesting of several areas of special significance in Tapuika (see Part Two for details).

The Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve will be vested jointly in Tapuika and Ngāti Whakaue who will, in turn and after a specified period of time, gift the reserve back to the Crown.

Deeds of Recognition are also provided in relation to several sites administered by the Department and in the Kaituna River. A whenua rāhui has been established over Opoutihi in the Gammons Block Conservation Area. A Relationship Agreement sets out how the Department and the Tapuika Iwi Authority Trust will work together in fulfilling the agreed strategic objectives.

---

<sup>12</sup> Rangitāiki River Forum 2015: Te Ara Whānui o Rangitāiki Pathways of the Rangitāiki. Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Whakatāne. 48 p. [cdn.boprc.govt.nz/media/415902/4417-pathways-of-the-rangitaiki-river-document-final-web-version.pdf](https://cdn.boprc.govt.nz/media/415902/4417-pathways-of-the-rangitaiki-river-document-final-web-version.pdf)

### 2.1.23 Tauranga Moana Iwi Collective

The Tauranga Moana Iwi Collective represents Ngāi Te Rangī, Ngāti Pūkenga and Ngāti Ranginui and has an area of interest extending from the summit of the Kaimai Range across to Otawa and out to the islands and marine environs of Tauranga Harbour (Tauranga Moana).

The Tauranga Moana Iwi Collective Deed 2015 provides for Te Kūpenga for the Department and Tauranga Moana iwi and hapū to work together to enhance conservation lands and includes a conservation partnership forum, a conservation principles document, a conservation management plan for the Ngatukituki Area and other specific decision-making functions.

### 2.1.24 Te Arawa Lakes Trust

The Te Arawa Lakes Trust<sup>13</sup> is a large confederation of iwi and hapū that have a traditional area of interest ranging from Maketu to Tongariro in the south.

The Te Arawa Lakes Settlement Act 2006 provides for the transfer of title of 13 lake beds back to Te Arawa.

The Act also provides for the establishment of a protocol with the Department to promote a good working relationship on cultural matters of importance to Te Arawa.

### 2.1.25 Te Arawa River Iwi

Te Arawa River Iwi refers to those iwi that comprise the Te Pūmāutanga o Te Arawa Trust on behalf of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū, particularly Ngāti Tahu – Ngāti Whāoa, Ngāti Kearoa, Ngāti Tuara and Tūhourangi Ngāti Wāhiao.

The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into a Conservation Portfolio Accord with Te Arawa River Iwi on 3 December 2010. This Accord gives effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River – Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato in respect of lands, species and resources the Department manages on behalf of the Crown and the New Zealand public.

The Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 gave effect to Deeds of Settlement entered into between the Crown and those iwi. This Act sets out the establishment and participation of each iwi in co-management of the Waikato River. The Deed of Settlement established co-governance and co-management arrangements over the river, with an overarching purpose to restore and protect its health and wellbeing for future generations.

The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato is a statement of Conservation General Policy, so this CMS must not derogate or be inconsistent with this. An integrated river management plan for the Upper Waikato River is provided for.

This Act requires that particular regard is given to environmental plans prepared by Trusts under it. Te Arawa River Iwi have prepared the Te Arawa River Iwi Trust Environmental Plan 2015<sup>14</sup> and Te Arawa River Iwi Trust Fisheries Plan 2015,<sup>15</sup> which are environmental plans under the Act and includes aspirations for the Waikato River and its tributaries and environs.

Appendix 13 outlines the Vision and Strategy and demonstrates how this CMS implements the Department's responsibilities towards achieving it.

<sup>13</sup> [tearawa.iwi.nz/](http://tearawa.iwi.nz/)

<sup>14</sup> [www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/assets/WRC/Community/Iwi/TARIT-Environmental-Management-Plan-2015.pdf](http://www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/assets/WRC/Community/Iwi/TARIT-Environmental-Management-Plan-2015.pdf)

<sup>15</sup> [www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/assets/PageFiles/21886/Te\\_Arawa\\_River\\_Iwi\\_Trust\\_Fish\\_Plan.pdf](http://www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/assets/PageFiles/21886/Te_Arawa_River_Iwi_Trust_Fish_Plan.pdf)



### 2.1.26 Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū

Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū refers to Te Arawa iwi and hapū that comprise the following 11 collective groups: Ngāti Ngararanui (including Ngāti Tamahika and Ngāti Tuteaiti), Ngāti Kea Ngāti Tuara, Ngāti Tura – Ngāti Te Ngakau, Ngāti Te Roro o Te Rangi, Ngāti Tuteniu, Ngāti Uenukukopako, Tūhourangi Ngāti Wāhiao, Ngāti Tahu – Ngāti Whaoa, Ngāti Pikiāo (excluding Ngāti Makino), Ngāti Rongomai and Ngāti Tarawhai.

The Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū traditional area of interest lies within the approximately 1 150 000-acre area extending from the Bay of Plenty coast to the inland Rotorua lakes and into the interior of the Mamaku and Kaingaroa forests. Other iwi and hapū also exercise customary interests within this area.

The Crown and the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū were parties to a Deed of Settlement in 2006, which provided for several areas of Crown-owned land to be vested in the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū. In recognition of the willingness of the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū to accommodate changes to the 2006 Deed, a 2008 Deed of Settlement included further cultural redress, including vesting further sites and a Deed of Recognition (see Part Two for details).

The settlement also provides for a whenua rāhui over four sites: the Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve, part of the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve, part of the Mount Ngongotaha Scenic Reserve and Matawhaura (part of the Lake Rotoiti Scenic Reserve). This acknowledges the traditional, cultural, spiritual and historical associations the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū have with these sites of significance. The Minister of Conservation issued a protocol to assist the Department and the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū in exercising their respective responsibilities with the utmost cooperation to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both.

---

<sup>16</sup> [www.waikatotainui.com/services/taiao/tai-tumu-tai-pari/](http://www.waikatotainui.com/services/taiao/tai-tumu-tai-pari/)

### 2.1.27 Waikato-Tainui

The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into a Conservation Portfolio Accord with Waikato-Tainui on 20 October 2008. This Accord gives effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River – Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato in respect of lands, species and resources the Department manages on behalf of the Crown and the New Zealand public.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 gave effect to the 2009 Deed of Settlement for the Raupatu claims of Waikato-Tainui concerning the Waikato River. The Deed of Settlement established co-governance and co-management arrangements over the river, with an overarching purpose to restore and protect its health and wellbeing for future generations.

The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River is a statement of Conservation General Policy, so this CMS must not derogate or be inconsistent with it. An integrated river management plan for the Upper Waikato River is provided for.

The Act also provides for a Waikato-Tainui flora cultural harvest plan within conservation protected areas in the Waikato River and its catchment.

Waikato-Tainui has developed an environmental plan named Tai Tumu, Tai Pari, Tai Ao<sup>16</sup> under section 39 of this Act, which provides guidance on Waikato-Tainui objectives, policies and values for the environment within its rohe. Under section 40 of the same Act, any person carrying out functions or exercising powers under conservation legislation in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment must have particular regard to the Waikato-Tainui Environmental Plan to the extent to which its contents relate to their functions and powers.

Appendix 13 outlines the Vision and Strategy and demonstrates how this CMS implements the Department's responsibilities for achieving it.

### 2.1.28 Waitaha

Waitaha is an ancient iwi that descends from the Te Arawa waka. Its area of interest extends from Waimapu to Mount Maunganui (Mauao), along the coastline to Maketu and inland to Otanewainuku.

The Waitaha Claims Settlement Act 2013 provided for the vesting of several sites in Waitaha, as well as Deeds of Recognition for sites that register the special association of Waitaha with areas that are managed by the Department and adjoin Raparapahoe Stream, Hakako Creek, Paraiti Creek, Popaki Creek and Kaokaonui Stream.

Whenua rāhui are provided for at Te Ara ā Hei (an area within the Ōtanewainuku Forest Reserve) and Ōtawa Maunga. The Minister of Conservation issued a protocol that establishes and maintains a positive and collaborative relationship to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both the Governance Entity and the Department, as set out in the protocol.

## 2.2 Treaty claims yet to be finalised or negotiated (as at CMS notification)

Tangata whenua in the Bay of Plenty region are at various stages in their settlement of historical claims under the Treaty of Waitangi (see the Treaty of Waitangi claims website<sup>17</sup> for an explanation of the settlement process and its different stages). The resolution of Treaty settlements with Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki, Ngāti Whakahemo, Ngāti Ruapani ki Waikaremoana, Ngāti Tūrangitukua, Ngāti Whakaue, Ngāti Rangitihi, Ngāitai (Bay Of Plenty), Ngāti Ruapani mai Waikaremoana, Whakatōhea, Te Whānau-ā-Apanui, Ngāti Ranginui, Ngāti Hako, Ngāti Rāhiri Tumutumu, Ngāti Tara Tokanui, Ngaati Whanaunga, Ngāti Tamaterā, Ngāti Maru (Hauraki), Te Patukirikiri, Te Upokorehe, Ngāi Te Rangi, Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Paoa and other iwi or hapū will facilitate the development of new partnerships and provide a firm platform for enduring and positive relationships between themselves and the Department.

The objectives, policies and milestones presented below are intended to build the partnership framework with tangata whenua to facilitate working together over the life of this CMS.

---

<sup>17</sup> [www.govt.nz/browse/history-culture-and-heritage/treaty-of-waitangi-claims/](http://www.govt.nz/browse/history-culture-and-heritage/treaty-of-waitangi-claims/)

## 2.3 Objective and policies for Treaty of Waitangi relationships

2.3.1 Objective	2.3.2 Policies
<p>2.3.1.1 Treaty relationships with tangata whenua are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) maintained and strengthened to enhance conservation and recognise the Treaty settlement partnership and kaitiakitanga; and</li> <li>b) based on the Department's responsibilities with respect to the Treaty principles, Deeds of Settlement and Settlement Acts.</li> </ul>	<p>2.3.2.1 Seek and maintain relationships with tangata whenua that encourage involvement and participation, enhance conservation, and are based on mutual good faith, cooperation and respect.</p> <p>2.3.2.2 Work with tangata whenua to identify, develop and review a mutual understanding of the Treaty of Waitangi principles and how they are applied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) when making statutory decisions;</li> <li>b) during statutory management planning processes; and</li> <li>c) through the operational delivery of conservation outcomes at each Place and in meeting milestones.</li> </ul> <p>2.3.2.3 Work with tangata whenua to develop ways to integrate tikanga such as mātauranga taiao, reciprocity, kaitiakitanga and departmental knowledge in the delivery of shared conservation goals, including by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) recognising the long-term, evolving and mutually beneficial nature of Treaty partnerships;</li> <li>b) protecting tangata whenua values and enhancing connection to their whenua and kātao/waters);</li> <li>c) actively sharing the management and decision-making of public conservation lands and waters where consistent with legislation; and</li> <li>d) better integrating Māori values and knowledge to support departmental decision-making across all conservation matters, including climate change.</li> </ul> <p>2.3.2.4 Work with tangata whenua to explore, identify and implement opportunities in a way that is consistent with legislation and the Department's statutory functions to support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) intergenerational wellbeing by enhancing access to and use of ancestral lands and taonga/treasures;</li> <li>b) capability and capacity to engage in conservation management and leadership;</li> <li>c) conservation projects of strategic priority to the natural, cultural and historic values of tangata whenua on public conservation lands and waters; and</li> <li>d) customary practices such as rāhui/restrictions on resources and the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species.</li> </ul>

2.3.2 Policies	
2.3.2.5	Work with tangata whenua on conservation issues, ensuring that engagement is early, ongoing, informed and effective. Engagement should occur: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) during the development of statutory planning documents;</li> <li>b) on specific proposals involving places, taonga species or resources of spiritual, historical or cultural significance to tangata whenua; and</li> <li>c) when developing public information and interpretation that refer to places or resources of significance to tangata whenua.</li> </ul>
2.3.2.6	Ensure that departmental staff are aware of and implement the Department’s responsibilities under the Deeds of Settlement and Settlement Acts and any associated protocols and guidance documents.
2.3.2.7	Work with PSGEs and tangata whenua, where relevant to their Treaty settlements, to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) promote integrated conservation management for areas adjoining public conservation lands and waters that have been transferred to PSGEs and tangata whenua;</li> <li>b) promote integrated advocacy where the Department has a common interest in resources located outside public conservation lands and waters; and</li> <li>c) establish, implement and review formal protocols or guidance documents.</li> </ul>
2.3.2.8	Work with tangata whenua to establish Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata/covenants and conservation agreements to protect the natural values of Māori-owned land.
2.3.2.9	Work with tangata whenua to identify which natural and cultural resources, sites, and other taonga on public conservation lands and waters require adaptation for climate change resilience.
2.3.2.10	Consider relevant iwi environmental plans and biodiversity strategies at each Place in the Department’s conservation management and operations.
	<b>Waikato River:</b>
2.3.2.11	Implement the directions and outcomes in the Waikato River Vision and Strategy – Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato <sup>18</sup> where it applies to the Department under conservation legislation.
2.3.2.12	Work cooperatively with all parties regarding requests for the Department’s participation on the Waikato River Authority.
2.3.2.13	Support tangata whenua and work with other partners in the development and implementation of the Upper Waikato Integrated River Management Plan to achieve integrated management of the Waikato River.
2.3.2.14	Have particular regard to iwi environmental plans in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment where required by Treaty legislation when carrying out functions or exercising powers under conservation legislation.
	<b>Rangitaiki River:</b>
2.3.2.15	Have particular regard to the vision, objectives and desired outcomes contained in the Rangitaiki River document Te Ara Whānui o Rangitāiki Pathways of the Rangitāiki.

<sup>18</sup> [waikatoriver.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/Vision-and-Strategy-Reprint-2019web.pdf](http://waikatoriver.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/Vision-and-Strategy-Reprint-2019web.pdf)





Inaugural Maori in Conservation hui Te Teko. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography





North Island brown kiwi at Whirinaki. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

### 3. National and regional objectives, policies and milestones

The Department's intermediate outcomes (see Introduction – Relationship with legislation and other statutory documents) are reflected in sections 3.1 to 3.4 below. The national objectives and policies provide for integrated conservation management across New Zealand, while the regional policies address issues and opportunities specifically in the Bay of Plenty region. Section 3.5 outlines the regional milestones.

#### 3.1 Natural values

The Bay of Plenty region contains a diverse and extensive range of habitats and ecosystems (see Appendix 3) and is known for its significant geothermal and volcanic environments. The volcanic nature of the land has resulted in numerous nationally and internationally significant and rare geothermal features and systems being found here.

An extensive coastal margin flanks the region. At the interface between the land and the Pacific Ocean, harbours, estuaries, saltmarshes and awa mouths abound, each with their own unique ecosystems and environments. The natural southern limit for mangroves (*Avicennia marina*) is at Ōhiwa Harbour, and there are numerous offshore islands that contain important habitats. The only marine protected areas that are currently in place in the region (as at November 2020) are around the offshore islands Mayor Island (Tuhua) and Te Paepae o Aotea, with no such protection of inshore habitats. These two marine reserves protect a mixture of shallow reef, soft-sediment and deep-sea environments, but represent less than 0.5% of the Bay of Plenty marine area.

The region also has a diverse range of other significant habitats and ecosystems, including indigenous ngahere, frost flats and freshwater environments (see Appendix 3). Notably, the Bay of Plenty represents the southern limit of kauri (*Agathis australis*) ngahere in New Zealand.

The region's diverse ecosystems provide numerous ecosystem services, which are defined as the direct and indirect contributions of ecosystems to human wellbeing. For example, the forest parks provide important services to the community, including



Kōkako at Manawahe. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

the protection of water quality and quantity; soil creation and retention; carbon sequestration to mitigate the human production of carbon dioxide and its effects on the climate; and water supply catchments for many towns and adjoining lands.

These habitats and ecosystems also support numerous threatened and at-risk species,<sup>19</sup> such as North Island brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*), North Island kōkako (*Callaeas wilsoni*) and dactylanthus (*Dactylanthus taylorii*) (see Appendix 6).

Many of the region's habitats and ecosystems are in serious decline as a result of the impacts of habitat loss and pest plants and animals, and only a fraction of the original indigenous wetlands, frost flats and ngahere types remain, making the remaining areas rare and valuable both regionally and nationally. However, outside the large forested parks, such as the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, Raukumara Conservation Park and Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park, much of the protected land is fragmented.

Mammalian pest species, such as dama wallaby (*Macropus eugenii*), are having serious impacts on ecosystem health throughout the region. In addition, biosecurity risks from diseases such as kauri dieback disease and myrtle rust remain a constant threat.

Over the term of this CMS, climate change is likely to have a variety of significant impacts on the indigenous biodiversity in this region, ranging from changes in the natural ranges of native species due to variations in temperatures and rainfall patterns through to changes in the types and variety of biosecurity risks. This needs careful consideration and will require advice and restrictions to be put in place where necessary. Native ngahere can act as 'carbon sinks', sequestering the greenhouse gas carbon dioxide. However, much is still to be learned about this process, so studies are being undertaken at Maunga Kākaramēa / Rainbow Mountain by the National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA) to improve our understanding of the role of native ngahere in carbon sequestration.

The Department is committed to working with tangata whenua on collaborative projects that benefit the whole community by improving shared learning and the integration of Māori values and knowledge. The application of mātauranga taiao is a valuable contribution of knowledge and skills, not only to tangata whenua but to the Department and the community (see Policies in Section 2: Treaty of Waitangi relationships, particularly Policies 2.3.2.1, 2.3.2.3 and 2.3.2.4).

<sup>19</sup> Threatened species include those listed as 'Nationally Critical', 'Nationally Endangered' or 'Nationally Vulnerable' under the New Zealand Threat Classification System, while at-risk species are listed as 'Declining', 'Recovering', 'Relict' or 'Naturally Uncommon'. Townsend, A.J.; de Lange, P.J.; Duffy, C.A.J.; Miskelly, C.M.; Molloy, J.; Norton, D.A. 2008: New Zealand Threat Classification System manual. Department of Conservation, Wellington. 35 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/sap244.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/sap244.pdf)



Partnerships with tangata whenua and working collaboratively with stakeholders are integral to preventing any further biodiversity losses in natural areas and allowing these to be progressively restored for future generations. Management activities, such as pest animal control, pest plant eradication and management, biosecurity surveillance, maintenance of pest-free status, and monitoring and advocacy, are likely to be undertaken in partnership with tangata whenua and in collaboration with community groups, regional councils and territorial authorities, and recreational and commercial hunters. It is important to support these collaborative efforts.

In this CMS, the term ‘priority ecosystem or species unit’ refers to a site where conservation work will most effectively contribute to protecting the full range of ecosystems nationally and/or threatened and at-risk species. The identification of such areas is one of the tools that is used to set priorities, and this CMS focuses the Department’s effort on these. However, work also occurs at other sites – for example, the Department and the Bay of Plenty Regional Council have identified shared ecological priority sites outside the priority ecosystem or species units. Research, monitoring and increased knowledge facilitate the adaptation of management approaches.

This CMS reflects the regional implementation of national conservation initiatives, such as Predator Free 2050<sup>20</sup> and Tiakina Ngā Manu.<sup>21</sup> Examples in the Bay of Plenty region include kōkako recovery programmes carried out in partnership with active groups of volunteers, and initiatives to control dama wallaby populations in partnership with the Bay of Plenty and Waikato regional councils.



Pukeko around Lake Rotorua on manuka branches. *Photo: Neil Hutton Photography*

<sup>20</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/predator-free-2050](http://www.doc.govt.nz/predator-free-2050)

<sup>21</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/our-work/tiakina-nga-manu](http://www.doc.govt.nz/our-work/tiakina-nga-manu)



## Objective and policies for natural values

Intermediate outcome – The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored	
3.1.1 Objective	3.1.2 Policies
<p>3.1.1.1 The diversity of natural values in New Zealand is maintained and restored, with priority given to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) conserving a full range of New Zealand’s ecosystems to a healthy functioning state, with an emphasis on the priority ecosystems listed in Appendices 5 and 8;</li> <li>b) conserving threatened species to ensure persistence,<sup>22</sup> with an emphasis on those species listed in Appendix 6;</li> <li>c) supporting the work of others to maintain and restore locally treasured natural values, including a selection of the ecosystem types and species listed in Appendices 3 and 6;</li> </ul>	<p><b>National</b></p> <p>3.1.2.1 Advocate for the protection of natural values that are at risk of permanent degradation, such as the priority ecosystem units and threatened species identified in Appendices 3, 5 and 6 and the significant geological features, landforms and landscapes identified in Appendix 9.</p> <p>3.1.2.2 Contain or control the pest plants and animals and wild animals identified in Appendix 7 through a targeted strategic and sustainable multi-threat management approach.</p> <p>3.1.2.3 Foster management action to control pest plants and animals and wild animals with interagency, concessionaire, community and other stakeholder involvement.</p> <p>3.1.2.4 Support relevant agencies in the implementation of pest management plans (subject to any good neighbour rules) and pathway management plans.<sup>23</sup></p> <p>3.1.2.5 Work cooperatively with Fire and Emergency New Zealand (FENZ)<sup>24</sup> to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) increase awareness of, assess and, where necessary, reduce vegetation fire risks relating to public conservation lands and waters, Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata, and any land where the Department has fire protection suppression and other response capability obligations, including those resulting from Deeds of Settlement; and</li> <li>b) provide information to visitors about how to mitigate fire risks and identify escape routes or safe areas if a vegetation fire occurs.</li> </ul>

<sup>22</sup> Persistence is achieved when there is a 95% probability of a species surviving over the next 50 years or three generations (whichever is longer).

<sup>23</sup> Refer to the Biosecurity Act 1993.

<sup>24</sup> Note: FENZ is responsible for managing fires nationally under the Fire and Emergency New Zealand Act 2017. The Department works with and supports FENZ to minimise and mitigate the threat of fires on public conservation land.

3.1.1 Objective	3.1.2 Policies
<p>d) conserving significant geological features, landforms and landscapes, including those identified in Appendix 9, where these are on public conservation lands waters; and</p> <p>e) adapting to and mitigating the effects of climate change.</p>	<p><b>Regional</b></p> <p>3.1.2.6 Expand collaborations with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders in landscape-scale predator control.</p> <p>3.1.2.7 Work with tangata whenua and other conservation stakeholders to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) prioritise the protection of and manage threats to threatened and at-risk species identified in Appendix 6; and</li> <li>b) monitor ecosystems and their indigenous species to inform how they are maintained and restored.</li> </ul> <p>3.1.2.8 3.1.2.8 Advocate for the sustainable management and protection of geothermal ecosystems through statutory processes under the Resource Management Act 1991 in collaboration with the Bay of Plenty Regional Council.</p> <p>3.1.2.9 3.1.2.9 Work with the Waikato and Bay of Plenty regional councils to control dama wallabies on public conservation lands and waters by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) preventing their further spread in areas where they are already established;</li> <li>b) progressively reducing their populations in areas where they are already established; and</li> <li>c) preventing them from becoming established in areas where they are not already present.</li> </ul> <p>3.1.2.10 Work collaboratively with other agencies to develop and implement biosecurity strategies to prevent biosecurity incursions of species, including the pathogen that causes kauri dieback disease (<i>Phytophthora agathidicida</i>), the myrtle rust fungus (<i>Austropuccinia psidii</i>) and didymo (<i>Didymosphenia geminata</i>).</p> <p>3.1.2.11 Continue to collaborate with regional councils to deliver better protection of the region’s indigenous ecosystems and species in an efficient way by conducting interagency projects.</p> <p>3.1.2.12 Work with tangata whenua, the Bay of Plenty Regional Council and conservation stakeholders to protect and improve the state of biodiversity at identified shared, regional ecological priority sites through the DOC/Bay of Plenty Regional Council Biodiversity Partnership Project.</p> <p>3.1.2.13 Develop and implement mutually agreed processes with tangata whenua for identifying indigenous taonga species.</p> <p>3.1.2.14 Support tangata whenua on projects that connect them with the whenua and kātao that enhance biodiversity, water quality and ecological functioning within their rohe.</p>

## 3.2 Historic values

The Bay of Plenty region is rich in both cultural and historic heritage and has a wide variety of heritage stories to tell from early Māori settlement through to European times. There are currently three Historic Icon sites (exceptional heritage places) in the region: the Karangahake Gorge Mines, the Waitawheta Mill and Tramway, and Tauwhare Pā.

Important sites associated with the New Zealand Wars, Māori settlement, machinery, tourism and recreation, European discovery, huts and wild animal control, bridges and transport, power generation, and the mining and timber industries offer unique and special visitor experiences that help New Zealanders and international visitors to understand our place in the world.

Places of significance to tangata whenua are often culturally sensitive. The Department aims to work with tangata whenua to identify and protect wāhi tapu and sites of cultural significance and, where appropriate, to tell their stories and improve their interpretation. The Department acknowledges the importance of understanding whakapapa/genealogy and wairua/spirit as it applies to managing issues of wāhi tapu and how best to provide adequate protection.

The following sites within this region are notable for their cultural and historical significance:

- **Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park:** The Karangahake Gorge, Waikino and the Waiorongomai River valley host several historic gold mining sites and infrastructure. The Waitawheta and Piako Country tramways are examples of the oldest bush tramways in the country that are still on their original rails.
- **Coastal sites:** Historic pā sites on the east coast of the region, particularly those located in and around the Ohope Scenic Reserve and Ōhiwa Harbour, including Tauwhare and Matekerepu, are outstanding representative examples of Māori resource use and settlement in the area.
- **Okere Falls Power Station:** This was the New Zealand Government's first hydroelectric power scheme.
- **Rotorua lakes:** Lakes Tarawera and Rotomahana near Rotorua represent the birthplace of tourism in New Zealand, having once been home to the Pink and White Terraces, which were considered the eighth Wonder of the World.
- **Tauranga Bridge:** The Tauranga Bridge in the Waioeka Gorge is one of only two surviving suspension bridges left in New Zealand and is registered with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga as a Category 1 historic place.<sup>25</sup>

---

<sup>25</sup> The New Zealand Heritage List / Rārangi Kōrero identifies New Zealand's significant and valued historic and cultural heritage places established under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 and maintained by Heritage New Zealand.

The Department also manages many other lesser-known historic sites that are highly valued by local communities. However, it is not possible for the Department to manage all recorded archaeological sites and historic places located on public conservation lands and waters due to the sheer number of them. Actively conserved historic places in the region are listed in Appendix 10.

A priority for the Department is to manage its actively conserved historic places and increase the number of places where stories are being told so that visitors enjoy more meaningful and memorable experiences. This can only be achieved through cooperative relationships with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, the public and other parties who are interested in the restoration and maintenance of historic sites in the region.

Under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, it is an offence to destroy or modify an archaeological site without first obtaining an archaeological authority. The Department works with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to ensure compliance with these requirements.



Historic Manganuku Bridge, Waioeka. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography



Karangahake Gorge Historic Trail. Photo: Crave Photography

## Objective and policies for historic values

Intermediate outcome – Our history is brought to life and protected	
3.2.1 Objective	3.2.2 Policies
<p>3.2.1.1 New Zealand’s history is brought to life, protected and conserved for future generations, with a focus on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) engaging more New Zealanders in their heritage; and</li> <li>b) increasing the benefits of historic values to New Zealanders.</li> </ul>	<p><b>National</b></p> <p>3.2.2.1 Work with tangata whenua, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and conservation stakeholders to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) identify the locations, values, significance and conditions of historic places<sup>26</sup> and wāhi tapu on public conservation lands and waters;</li> <li>b) ensure records of the locations, values, significance and conditions of these places are kept up to date; and</li> <li>c) consult and share relevant information before any significant earthworks or development occurs that could affect the value, significance or condition of a historic place or wāhi tapu on public conservation lands and waters.</li> </ul> <p>3.2.2.2 Add new sites or remove sites from the actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 10, based on their:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) historical, cultural and physical significance;</li> <li>b) value to tangata whenua and the community; and</li> <li>c) conservation requirements.</li> </ul> <p>3.2.2.3 Profile Historic Icon sites and a selection of the actively conserved places listed in Appendix 10 through quality interpretation both on and off site to enable visitors to identify with the places and their stories.</p> <p>3.2.2.4 Understand the expectations of tangata whenua, the community and others regarding the conservation and management of historic places on public conservation lands and waters.</p> <p>3.2.2.5 Undertake conservation work (repair and maintenance) at the actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 10, having regard to any heritage assessments and conservation plans, national and international best practices, and the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) New Zealand Charter.<sup>27</sup></p>

<sup>26</sup> Historic places include archaeological sites. Refer to Glossary for a definition.

<sup>27</sup> [icomos.org.nz/charters/](http://icomos.org.nz/charters/)

3.2.2 Policies	
	<p><b>Regional</b></p> <p>3.2.2.6 Work with tangata whenua, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and others to utilise expertise and shared interests to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a) conserve and protect historic places and wāhi tapu on public conservation lands and waters;</li><li>b) tell the stories of some historic places and wāhi tapu on public conservation lands and waters; and</li><li>c) integrate and enhance the visitor experience.</li></ul> <p>3.2.2.7 Support and work with tangata whenua to improve capability and capacity to effectively manage historic sites, including at the Karangahake Gorge, Waitawheta River valley, Tauwhare Pā and Lake Tarawera.</p>



### 3.3 Recreation values

The Bay of Plenty is one of the fastest growing regions in the country, though some parts, particularly in the eastern areas, are experiencing static to declining population numbers. The region is also a popular holiday destination, with an established international and domestic tourism market, due to its warm and sunny summer climate, its long and varied coastline, its interesting geothermal and volcanic features, and its cultural and historic attractions.

The region offers a wide range of recreation opportunities, ranging from spectacular day walks, camping, geothermal attractions and Māori cultural sites through to more adventurous activities, such as mountain biking, fishing, scuba diving, hunting and tramping. Rotorua is a key destination for international visitors, particularly the surrounding geothermal areas and Māori cultural centres.

Visitor numbers to the Bay of Plenty are likely to increase in the future, particularly in areas such as Karangahake and Rotorua. Increasing numbers of visitors can place pressures on facilities in some areas, such as at Karangahake in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, where traffic and car parking issues arise due to the popularity of the site. However, there is capacity for visitor growth in other areas.

The region also faces other recreational pressures, such as an increasing desire from the community to take a greater role in managing and establishing mountain biking tracks, increasing instances of unregulated freedom camping, biosecurity threats that can impact on recreational uses (e.g. kauri dieback disease) and the effects of climate change on visitor facilities. Therefore, the management, prioritisation, provisioning and monitoring of recreation opportunities for the local Bay of Plenty community and visitors to the region must be carefully considered.

The Department is one of many providers of recreation opportunities in the region and consequently works with other managers of public land and recreation providers when planning these opportunities. The Department recognises the whakapapa of tangata whenua and the connection of their tīpuna/ancestors to the whenua, ngahere and awa. As kaitiaki, these taonga must be protected and preserved for future generations.

The Department uses a combination of approaches to manage recreation, settings and activities on public conservation lands and waters, including visitor management zones and destination management. Te ao Māori can also help inform the Department when planning for recreation experiences and improve the connection of visitors with the cultural heritage of the areas they recreate in.



Mountain biking on the Tirohanga Dunes Trail. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

Visitor management zones (see Map 3 and Appendix 14) are based on the Recreation Opportunity Spectrum<sup>28</sup> and help identify and plan for a range of recreation opportunities that are classified as Urban, Rural, Front-country, Backcountry, Remote and Wilderness. The zone characteristics (prescriptions) guide departmental decision-making, including the provision of facilities and assessment of concession applications.

The intent of destination management (see Appendix 11) is to increase recreational use on public conservation lands and waters. This is a holistic approach that considers marketing and the contribution of community and business to the visitor experience. The focus is on the predominant visitor groups accessing different destinations (see the Glossary for a fuller definition of destination categories):

- **Icon destinations** – for people travelling on holiday. Most Icon destinations in the Bay of Plenty region are clustered around the historic sites of the Karangahake Gorge in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park and on the popular tracks and campsites along the Tarawera Trail (see Appendix 11).
- **Gateway destinations** – for new participants. Examples of Gateway destinations in the Bay of Plenty region include Waiorongomai in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, which has interesting walks through areas that are rich in history; the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park, which has a range of short to multi-day walks through ancient ngahere; and the Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve, where wildlife can be observed moments away from camping and swimming opportunities (see Appendix 11).
- **Local Treasure destinations** – for the recreation needs of local communities. Popular Local Treasure destinations in the Bay of Plenty region include the Wairere Falls Track, which takes visitors to one of the North Island’s highest waterfalls; the Maunga Kākaramēa / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve, where tracks for walkers and bikers offer views over the Rotorua area and beyond; Rotorua lakes campsites, which provide accommodation in one of the most popular tourist destinations in New Zealand; and the Ohope Scenic Reserve, which has walking tracks offering views out to sea.
- **Backcountry** – for people wanting more challenging experiences. Backcountry destinations in the Bay of Plenty region include sites within the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park and Raukumara Conservation Park.

---

<sup>28</sup> Taylor, P.C. (Comp.) 1993: The New Zealand Recreation Opportunity Spectrum: guidelines for users. Hillary Commission and Department of Conservation, Wellington. 39 p.



## Objective and policies for recreation values

Intermediate outcome – New Zealanders and our visitors are enriched by outdoor experiences	
3.3.1 Objective	3.3.2 Policies
<p>3.3.1.1 The outdoor experiences of visitors are enriched, with an emphasis on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) supporting the growth and development of Icon and Gateway destinations; and</li> <li>b) encouraging more people to enjoy Local Treasure and Backcountry destinations.</li> </ul>	<p><b>National</b></p> <p>3.3.2.1 Identify, provide and maintain a range of outdoor recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) these are consistent with the:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ii. protection of natural, historic and cultural values;</li> <li>iii. purposes for which the lands and waters concerned are held;</li> <li>iv. outcomes and policies for the relevant Places; and</li> <li>v. visitor management zones identified in Map 3 and described in Appendix 14;</li> </ul> </li> <li>b) demand is evident and expected to be maintained;</li> <li>c) the effects of climate change have been considered; and</li> <li>d) biosecurity threats have been considered.</li> </ul> <p>3.3.2.2 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the Icon and Gateway destinations identified in Appendix 11 as strategic attractions within the network of opportunities offered in the region.</p> <p>3.3.2.3 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the Local Treasure (Appendix 10) and Backcountry destinations as locally important locations and more challenging attractions, respectively, within the network of opportunities offered in the region.</p> <p>3.3.2.4 Work with Land Information New Zealand (LINZ), the New Zealand Walking Access Commission (NZWAC), regional councils and territorial authorities, regional Fish &amp; Game councils, other agencies, and landowners to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) progressively enhance connectivity and public access to and between public conservation lands and waters and other public open spaces, road and rail corridors, and regional and local trail networks; and</li> <li>b) achieve priorities (as identified in Part Two) for improved access to public conservation lands and waters for recreation and enhanced public access to the coastal margin, lakes and rivers.</li> </ul>

3.3.2 Policies	
	<p><b>Regional</b></p> <p>3.3.2.5 Work with tangata whenua to provide information to visitors and the community that explains the whakapapa and cultural heritage of the natural environment they are recreating in on public conservation lands and waters.</p> <p>3.3.2.6 Work with tangata whenua, NZWAC, regional councils and territorial authorities, user groups, and others to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) monitor impacts of recreational use on natural, historic and cultural values and tracks and other facilities;</li> <li>b) understand the needs and preferences of visitors; and</li> <li>c) understand the contribution that recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters are making to recreation opportunities in the region.</li> </ul> <p>3.3.2.7 Collaborate with tangata whenua, Tourism Bay of Plenty, Destination Coromandel, Destination Rotorua, Tourism Eastland, other tourism agencies, private landowners, regional councils and territorial authorities, and other interested groups to develop and promote joint initiatives and manage pressures at high-use sites.</p> <p>3.3.2.8 Promote recreation opportunities for local communities, such as short walks that are accessible from urban areas, and advocate for the Bay of Plenty Regional Council and tourism agencies and operators to develop transportation options to these sites.</p> <p>3.3.2.9 Work with regional councils and territorial authorities, both on and off public conservation lands and waters, to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) manage the demand for and impacts of freedom/responsible camping; and</li> <li>b) continue to provide and investigate new camping opportunities.</li> </ul> <p>3.3.2.10 Avoid, or otherwise minimise, adverse effects on the qualities of peace and natural quiet, solitude, and remoteness in places where these are important features and an expectation of the visitor experience.</p> <p>3.3.2.11 Investigate candidate sites for ‘Great Short Walks’ or ‘Great Day Hikes’ and other national initiatives.</p> <p>3.3.2.12 Promote smoke-free campsites on public conservation lands and waters in the Bay of Plenty through education, information and advocacy.</p>

## 3.4 Engagement

The Department aims to grow conservation by working with and enabling others. Engaging in strategic partnerships with tangata whenua, central and local government, community groups, and businesses can gain efficiencies and make a stronger collective impact.

The term 'engagement' describes a range of approaches that are used to involve people who could be affected by activities undertaken by the Department or who can influence or contribute to implementing and achieving the outcomes in this CMS. Engagement approaches include education, volunteering, advocacy, collaboration and partnerships. The approach used reflects the outcomes being sought by both the Department and other parties. Other sections of this CMS also describe engagement that is being undertaken or proposed to address a wide range of conservation challenges.

The Department has an important role to play in facilitating partnerships and supporting others to engage in conservation through working in partnership with tangata whenua, councils, statutory agencies, Ngā Whenua Rāhui, the Queen Elizabeth II (QEII) National Trust, the public, landowners, volunteers, community groups and others to conserve and restore our taonga for future generations. These partnerships see many valuable volunteer hours being contributed to conservation activities on public conservation lands and waters.

Wairua is an important concept for the Department in terms of having peaceful relationships across the community. The Department intends to build and nurture these partnerships and seeks to reflect principles such as whakawhanaungatanga, which is about building and maintaining strong reciprocal relationships of respect, and māhaki, which is about showing humility when sharing knowledge and experiences to understand each side and to foster trust in the relationship.

The Department works with a wide range of statutory agencies to achieve common objectives and mutually agreed priorities. It has a shared commitment with regional councils, including the Bay of Plenty Regional Council, to work together towards the protection of the region's biodiversity and to develop more efficient ways of working to ensure better protection of the region's indigenous ecosystems and species and better value for communities.

The Department also acknowledges the work of non-governmental organisations such as the Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society (Forest & Bird), the NZ Landcare Trust, Federated Mountain Clubs, the New Zealand Deerstalkers Association and many others who undertake conservation work both on and off public conservation lands and waters.

There are many engaged community groups in the region that are working with the Department or independently on activities ranging from restoring ngahere, coastal areas and wildlife to managing huts, tracks and historic places. Many of these groups have large-scale restoration and biodiversity recovery as their aims, while others focus on particular threatened species (such as kōkako or kiwi) or provide support for huts and tracks. These conservation groups and volunteers play a vital role in bringing the Department's story to life and are integral to achieving our vision and 2025 stretch goals.

The Department has an opportunity to work with these community groups and private landowners by providing support and resources to contribute towards the wide range of conservation work they undertake, including biodiversity, historic, cultural and recreational projects. A strong framework of management agreements ensures clarity of roles and responsibilities and guides investment decisions so that they align with regional and national priorities while supporting a variety of creative and innovative conservation projects.

During the term of this CMS, changes in understanding, knowledge or technology are likely to occur, as well as in the range of activities supported by these groups. For example, increasing knowledge about climate change and its possible impacts could result in changes to coastal and freshwater restoration or pest-control activities.



Omarumutu community planting day. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

## Objective and policies for recreation values

Intermediate outcome – New Zealanders connect and contribute to conservation	
3.4.1 Objective	3.4.2 Policies
<p>3.4.1.1 New Zealanders and businesses connect and contribute to our nature by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) ensuring conservation is seen as an essential investment in New Zealanders’ wellbeing and is core to their identity, values and thinking; and</li> <li>b) increasing the amount of conservation achieved.</li> </ul>	<p><b>National</b></p> <p>3.4.2.1 Build enduring relationships with others to support the conservation outcomes outlined in this CMS.</p> <p>3.4.2.2 Enable New Zealanders and others to develop the knowledge and skills to support and sustain their conservation actions by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) actively engaging with young people in schools and other education settings;</li> <li>b) providing on-site information about values, threats to these values, and how people can take an active role as kaitiaki of public conservation lands and waters; and</li> <li>c) strengthening networks with tangata whenua, conservation stakeholders, other government departments and agencies, and community groups to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. foster cohesive and coordinated conservation education; and</li> <li>ii. build the capability, capacity and motivation for New Zealanders to engage with conservation.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>3.4.2.3 3.4.2.3 Raise awareness of the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) contribution public conservation lands and waters within the region make to the wellbeing and economic prosperity of the region and New Zealanders;</li> <li>b) importance of intact, functioning ecosystems to New Zealand’s economy, both directly and indirectly; and</li> <li>c) effects of climate change on conservation values.</li> </ul> <p>3.4.2.4 Work with concessionaires and other businesses to enhance the conservation experience of their customers and others.</p> <p>3.4.2.5 Work with tourism organisations, regional councils, territorial authorities, other promotional groups and businesses to create and develop opportunities to promote conservation initiatives, products and services.</p> <p>3.4.2.6 Work with regional councils and territorial authorities and relevant agencies to avoid duplication of regulatory controls on public conservation lands and waters and to streamline and seek efficiencies in statutory processes.</p>



3.3.2 Policies	
	<p><b>Regional</b></p> <p>3.4.2.7 Actively identify and facilitate opportunities for tangata whenua engagement in conservation and recreation work, and support leadership in conservation and land management.</p> <p>3.4.2.8 Give priority to education programmes that support:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the achievement of outcomes, objectives and policies identified in this CMS;</li> <li>b) the achievement of a predator-free Bay of Plenty by 2050; and</li> <li>c) increased understanding of the effects of climate change on indigenous species, ecosystems and biodiversity values.</li> </ol> <p>3.4.2.9 Work with tangata whenua and community groups to support conservation outcomes on public conservation lands and waters, and assist these groups to connect and work together, including through entering into formal management agreements where relevant.</p> <p>3.4.2.10 Support research into ecosystem services and natural capital provided by public conservation lands and waters to better understand and quantify these services, and make this information publicly available.</p> <p>3.4.2.11 Advocate to the agriculture, horticulture and forestry industries and landowners for increased landscape connectivity and increased biodiversity on production lands.</p> <p>3.4.2.12 Identify opportunities to use and develop technology to increase community engagement.</p> <p>3.4.2.13 Actively participate in significant district, regional and national events to reach large, non-traditional audiences.</p> <p>3.4.2.14 Maintain effective working relationships with adjoining landowners and occupiers through communication and cooperation on matters of mutual interest, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the management and control of pest plants and animals;</li> <li>b) the management and control of livestock;</li> <li>c) maintaining and improving habitat connectivity;</li> <li>d) public access; and</li> <li>e) mitigating fire risk.</li> </ol> <p>3.4.2.15 Work with tangata whenua to integrate values such as mātauranga taiao that enable visitors and the community to recognise and appreciate the cultural and historic heritage within the natural environment on public conservation lands and waters.</p>

## 3.5 Regional milestones

The milestones presented below apply to one or more of the Places within this document and give effect to the objectives set out in Part One. They are grouped according to the priority headings set out in the Statement of Intent 2016–2020<sup>29</sup> where possible. Milestones that relate to all priorities are listed first.

The regional milestones need to be read in conjunction with the more specific milestones for Places presented in Part Two.

Natural values	Historic values	Recreation values
<b>Treaty of Waitangi principles</b>		
3.5.1	Developed co-designed processes with tangata whenua to understand and implement the Treaty principles in the delivery of the Department's work at each Place (years 1, 4, 7 & 10).	
<b>Shared capability and training</b>		
3.5.2	Jointly identified opportunities for shared capability and training between tangata whenua and the Department (years 1, 4, 7 & 10).	
<b>Strategic projects</b>		
3.5.3	Developed mutually agreed processes for identifying projects of significance to tangata whenua (years 1, 4, 7 & 10).	
3.5.4	Prioritised the projects of significance to tangata whenua identified in milestone 3.5.1 (years 4, 7 & 10).	
3.5.5	Completed or made progress on the priority projects of significance identified in milestones 3.5.1 and 3.5.2 (years 7 & 10).	
<b>Cultural monitoring and education</b>		
3.5.6	Applied, in collaboration with tangata whenua, cultural monitoring approaches based on mātauranga taiao (year 4).	
3.5.7	Collaboratively educated the public on the approaches identified in milestone 3.5.6, increasing understanding of mātauranga taiao and respect for species and the environment (years 4, 7 & 10).	

<sup>29</sup> Department of Conservation 2016: Department of Conservation Statement of Intent 2016–2020. Department of Conservation, Wellington. 30 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/publications/statement-of-intent-2016-2020.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/publications/statement-of-intent-2016-2020.pdf)

Natural values	Historic values	Recreational values
<b>Te ao Māori information</b>		
3.5.8 Identified sites supported by tangata whenua that are suitable for interpretation in te reo Māori or other mechanisms to support te ao Māori information (year 1).		
3.5.9 Installed and updated te ao Māori interpretive, instructional and identifying information at sites identified in milestone 3.5.8 (years 4, 7 & 10).		
<b>Cultural materials plans</b>		
3.5.10 Supported the development of cultural materials plans for customary practice and the use of traditional materials and indigenous species (years 1, 4, 7 & 10).		
<b>Waikato River</b>		
3.5.11 Established a working group with Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi and started to develop the conservation component of the Upper Waikato River Integrated Management Plan (year 3).		
3.5.12 Approved the conservation component of the Upper Waikato River Integrated Management Plan jointly with Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi and worked collaboratively to implement it (years 7 & 10).		
<b>Ecosystems</b>	<b>Bringing history to life</b>	<b>Increased recreation</b>
3.5.13 Undertaken work in the priority ecosystem units listed in Appendix 5, which has maintained or improved the ecological functioning of these units (years 1, 4, 7 & 10).	<b>Sites of cultural significance</b>	3.5.37 Developed a list of priority recreation sites for monitoring (year 1).
3.5.14 Undertaken restoration work in 20% of the sites listed in the DOC/Bay of Plenty Regional Council Biodiversity Partnership priority list (year 4).	3.5.26 Identified sites supported by tangata whenua that are suitable for having their stories told (years 1, 4, 7 & 10).	3.5.38 Established visitor satisfaction monitoring for priority recreation sites (year 4).
3.5.15 Undertaken restoration work in 40% of the sites listed in the DOC/Bay of Plenty Regional Council Biodiversity Partnership priority list (year 10).	3.5.27 Supported tangata whenua to tell their stories and associations with sites of cultural significance (years 4, 7 & 10).	3.5.39 Analysed visitor satisfaction at priority recreation sites and established an improvement programme (year 7).
<b>Threatened species</b>	3.5.28 Evaluated all existing storytelling for all actively conserved sites and developed a prioritised programme for enhancing storytelling at these sites (year 4).	3.5.40 Obtained evidence that visitor satisfaction has increased for destinations listed in Appendix 11 (year 10).
3.5.16 Maintained or increased the persistence of threatened species listed in Appendix 6 (years 1, 4, 7 & 10).		3.5.41 Established mechanisms for gathering and analysing baseline visitor count data at all priority recreation sites (year 4).
3.5.17 Completed a regional review of threatened species management and identified gaps in management for persistence and recovery (year 1).		3.5.42 Obtained evidence that more people are visiting all priority recreation sites (years 7 & 10).
3.5.18 Developed a regional Threatened Species Implementation Plan (year 4).		
3.5.19 Increased the number of threatened and at-risk species under management by 40% (year 7).		

Natural values	Historic values	Recreational values
<p><b>Pests, threats and wild animals</b></p> <p>3.5.20      Trialled new methods and technologies for pest control (years 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p> <p>3.5.21      Increased the total number of hectares of land under sustained pest control by 15% (year 4).</p> <p><b>Community involvement and partnerships</b></p> <p>3.5.22      Obtained evidence that collaborative restoration opportunities for ecosystems and species in the region have increased (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p> <p><b>Taonga species</b></p> <p>3.5.23      Developed mutually agreed processes for identifying indigenous taonga species with tangata whenua (year 4).</p> <p><b>Climate change adaption</b></p> <p>3.5.24      Identified sites, native habitats, indigenous species and associated biodiversity at high or extreme risk due to the impacts of climate change (year 1).</p> <p>3.5.25      Implemented adaptive actions to increase resilience to climate change impacts on natural values (years 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p>	<p><b>Historic Icons</b></p> <p>3.5.29      Completed an initial assessment report for Historic Icon sites at the Karangahake Gorge Mines and Waitawheta Mill and Tramway, and the potential Historic Icon site at Tarawera (year 1).</p> <p>3.5.30      Developed historic assessment reports for other sites not identified as Historic Icons that are likely to meet the criteria for 'actively conserved' sites (year 4).</p> <p>3.5.31      Implemented recommendations and methodology from assessment reports for the preservation of both Historic Icon and proposed Historic Icon sites (year 4).</p> <p>3.5.32      Developed a baseline monitoring plan for Historic Icon sites (year 1).</p> <p>3.5.33      Developed a monitoring regime after undertaking historic assessment reports for Historic Icon sites (years 4 &amp; 7).</p> <p>3.5.34      Implemented a monitoring regime for Historic Icon sites (years 7 &amp; 10).</p> <p><b>Climate change adaption</b></p> <p>3.5.35      Identified and assessed cultural heritage sites, assets and infrastructure at high or extreme risk from the impacts of climate change (year 1).</p> <p>3.5.36      Implemented adaptive actions to increase resilience to climate change impacts on historic values (years 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p>	<p><b>Locally treasured destinations</b></p> <p>3.5.43      Developed an improvement plan for the most popular destinations where facilities are below standard for the target visitor group (year 4).</p> <p><b>Engaging others</b></p> <p>3.5.44      Demonstrated that the number of volunteer hours contributed through community partnerships to support the management of recreation sites has increased (year 10).</p> <p><b>Lesser-known locations</b></p> <p>3.5.45      Developed a campaign to promote 'lesser-known' recreation sites that are easily accessible (year 1).</p> <p>3.5.46      Made information regarding 'lesser-known' recreation sites available at i-SITEs and through other key promotional partners (year 4).</p> <p>3.5.47      Increased visitor numbers to 'lesser-known' recreation sites (years 7 &amp; 10).</p>





# Part Two – Places





Tieke on Moutohorā Whale Island. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

This section addresses Places in the Bay of Plenty region that have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management and require some specific management direction. Each Place has a description, an outcome statement (outcomes), tables (which include values, issues and opportunities, and policies) and milestones (which cover Treaty of Waitangi relationships and natural, historic and recreation values). See the Introduction (page 11) for the interpretation of terms used within this section and guidance on how to use this CMS.

The boundaries for these Places have been defined solely for the purposes of this CMS and the management of these Places. It is recognised that tangata whenua rohe, ecosystems, habitats and species move across these boundaries.

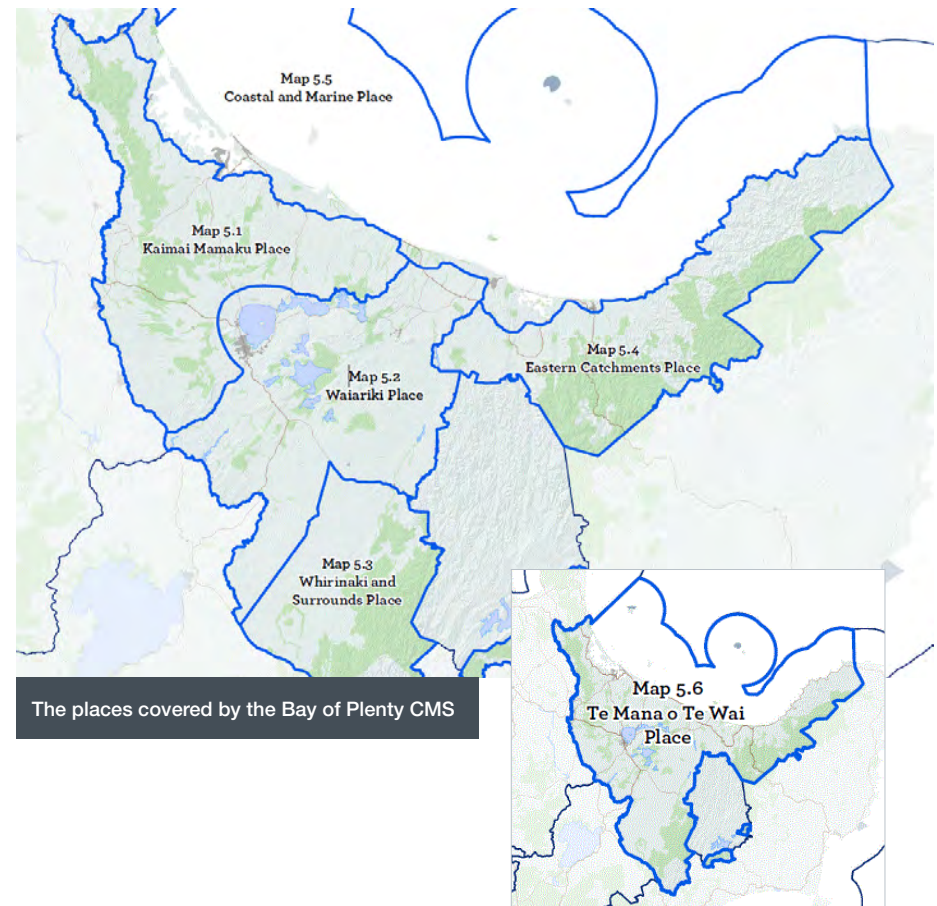
Part Two must be read in conjunction with Parts One, Three and Four of this CMS, as well as the appendices and maps. Where the provisions in Part Two are more specific than those in Parts One and Three, the provisions of Part Two prevail.

All tables within the Places also need to be read in conjunction with one another, as many are interconnected.

Note: The Treaty of Waitangi relationships table does not contain issues, opportunities or policies, as the intent of this table is to acknowledge Treaty settlement partnerships, tangata whenua, and their cultural and spiritual connections and values at each Place. Instead, tangata whenua issues and opportunities are reflected in the natural, historic and recreation values tables, as the Department works in partnership with tangata whenua in all conservation matters, and a commitment to work closely with our Treaty partners in all aspects of the Department's work is at the heart of this CMS.

**The Places in this CMS include the:**

- Kaimai Mamaku Place – section 4;
- Waiariki Place – section 5;
- Whirinaki Surrounds Place – section 6;
- Eastern Catchments Place – section 7;
- Coastal and Marine Place – section 8; and
- Te Mauri o te Wai Place – section 9.







Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park. Photo: Crave Photography

## 4. Kaimai Mamaku Place

**Whakapūpūtia mai ō mānuka, kia kore ai e whati.**

**Cluster the branches of mānuka, so they will not break – together, with a shared vision, we know which direction to go.**

The Kaimai Range, Mamaku Plateau and surrounding ngahere are taonga to the many iwi, hapū and whanau associated with them. Māori oral traditions trace many great feats of exploration in this Place, including tapatapa whenua (naming landscapes after deeds and events) and taunaha whenua (naming landscapes to establish ownership). Numerous pā sites were established throughout the area and sustained by the mauri / life force of the surrounding ngahere and the moana. The significance of this Place is embedded within the many stories, memories and geographies that frame the expression and practice of values and tikanga for both the present and the future.

### 4.1 Overview

The Kaimai Mamaku Place stretches along the western part of the Bay of Plenty, with the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park forming a geographical spine from north to south and providing the origins of important watersheds flowing to both the east and the west. Several other significant but smaller areas of public conservation lands and waters extend towards the coast and eastwards as far as Rotoehu.

The Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park is dominated by two interconnected features, the Kaimai Range and the Mamaku Plateau, which are integral to the sense of place and natural character of the western Bay of Plenty and eastern Waikato. The sharply rising Kaimai Range has a steep scarp slope facing the Hauraki Plains to the west and a gentler slope down to the Tauranga basin in the east. It forms a physical divide that traditionally acted as a barrier to the movements of both Māori and European peoples between the east and west.

<sup>1</sup> The Tohu Whenua programme is a joint initiative between the Ministry for Culture and Heritage, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, the Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment, and the Department. These sites have distinctive markers and branded signage, telling unique stories about their importance to our nation's heritage, and are linked to other 'must-see' historic sites in the country. A Tohu Whenua status can attract greater resources to ensure they are managed to prevent damage. For more information, visit <https://mch.govt.nz/tohu-whenua>.



The Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park was originally set aside as a reserve for soil and water conservation and has important air, water and soil protection values. It provides a significant reservoir that protects water quality and regulates flows, particularly in severe weather events. Its ranges and plateau are divided by deeply entrenched river systems that drain into Tauranga Harbour, the Firth of Thames, the Bay of Plenty coast, the Rotorua lakes and the Waikato River. The rivers also sustain numerous municipal drinking water supplies, as well as the Kaimai hydroelectric power scheme (see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place).

The geology of this Place has created habitats that vary in altitude and soil type and comprise an unusually diverse range of flora and fauna. Significantly, this Place marks the southern limit of naturally occurring kauri ngahere and is the only area in New Zealand where silver beech (*Lophozonia menziesii*) and kauri are found growing together in the montane zone. The kauri ngahere in this Place are free of kauri dieback disease, but this still presents a significant threat, so their protection is a priority focus here.

Many of the threatened species in this Place, such as the kōkako, are remnant populations that face local extinction. Pockets of ngahere are responding well to intensive pest management, but most ngahere in this Place are in serious decline due to the impacts of pests. This decline must be halted.

This Place has a rich history, with nationally significant sites showcasing the region's gold mining and timber milling history, and many traditional Māori trails and wāhi tapu being present.

The Kaimai Mamaku Place is located close to approximately half of the country's population and between the largest and fastest growing population and visitor centres in New Zealand, making it a popular area for people to visit. Consequently, visitor pressure can be significant, particularly at accessible locations such as the Karangahake area, which is nationally recognised for its outstanding historic heritage values; and Wairere Falls, where a popular walk offers outstanding views of the Hauraki Plains and one of the North Island's highest waterfalls.

## 4.2 Outcomes

### **This section describes the outcomes being sought for this Place – what it will be like in 10 years' time.**

Strong, positive partnerships between the Department and tangata whenua thrive in this Place, with frameworks enabling shared management and decision-making for public conservation lands and waters and guiding positive and productive relationships. There is shared knowledge, skills and decision-making in biodiversity and recreation projects. The ngahere and pae maunga / mountain ranges of the Kaimai Mamaku Place are widely recognised as tīpuna.

The degradation of habitats and ecosystems in this Place has been measurably reversed through focused species restoration and sustained landscape-scale pest control. The ngahere ecosystems have an improved integrity, allowing them to support a diversity of flora and fauna and contribute to regional water and soil protection. The remnant kōkako populations have increased and their songs ring out through the ngahere. Protected areas and complementary sites are becoming better connected, creating ecological networks that allow priority species to move from place to place. The kauri ngahere are protected and remain free of kauri dieback disease.

The cultural and historic heritage of the ngahere in this Place is valued and protected and enhanced for enduring generational protection. Throughout this Place, visitor expectations and opportunities to experience heritage and nature are in harmony with a healthier environment.

The Kaimai Mamaku Place is nationally and internationally known for its historic heritage, offering visitors a range of experiences and opportunities to hear the stories of Māori and European history and industrial heritage that are unique to it. Historic sites at Karangahake and Waitawheta have been formally recognised as Tohu Whenua / landmarks<sup>1</sup> and conserved for their outstanding heritage values, while additional sites have been identified as Historic Icon sites.

The Department has partnered with tangata whenua to provide interpretation at significant sites. At least one walking connection that follows an ancestral route from



Tuahu Kauri and wash station. *Photo: Crave Photography*

east to west over the Kaimai Range has been brought to life, and visitors leave with a deeper understanding of the cultural and historical significance of the route.

Local communities are highly engaged in conservation efforts. They have a sense of connection and take pride in enjoying the natural values and history of this Place. The opportunity for people to experience nature at its best has been measurably enhanced through strong partnerships with community groups, who play an active role and often lead work programmes in these locations.

A range of recreation opportunities are available and are carefully managed in partnership with tangata whenua and the community. Front-country experiences in the northern Kaimai area are underpinned by a well-supported infrastructure of walkways and facilities that are tailored to meet the demands of increasing numbers of local, national and international visitors and to improve visitor distribution across the area.

Visitors to the central Kaimai Range take pleasure in the solitude of the backcountry. Access to a network of backcountry tracks and huts is maintained where there is sustained demand. For the southern areas of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, including the Mamaku Plateau, there is a focus on biodiversity and natural values. Visitors to the Kaimai Conservation Park and Waikino (Strawbridge) Conservation Area might occasionally encounter aircraft in this Place.

## 4.3 Values, issues and opportunities, and policies

4.3.1	Treaty of Waitangi relationships
<b>Treaty settlement information</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition set out agreements between the Minister of Conservation and claimant groups in recognition of their special associations with various sites and specify the nature of their input into the management of those sites.</li> </ul>
<b>Tangata whenua within this Place</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tangata whenua with Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within the Kaimai Mamaku Place include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāti Hauā through the Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014, which provides for Deeds of Recognition for the Waikato River and its tributaries;</li> <li>- Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū through the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claims Settlement Act 2008, which applies to 3 of the 11 affiliates (Ngāti Kea Ngāti Tuara, Ngāti Tura – Ngāti Te Ngakau and Ngāti Pikiāo) and provides a Deed of Recognition for the Matahana Ecological Area;</li> <li>- Raukawa through the Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, which provides for Deeds of Recognition for the Arahiwi Scenic Reserve and part of Lake Ohakuri; and</li> <li>- o Waitaha through the Waitaha Claims Settlement Act 2013, which provides for a whenua rāhui for Te Whakairinga Kōrero (Te Ara a Hei, an area within the Ōtanewainuku Forest Reserve) and the Otawa Scenic Reserve (Otawa Maunga).</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Other tangata whenua with ancestral lands in this Place but who are at different stages of the Treaty settlement process include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāi Te Rangī;</li> <li>- Ngāti Ranginui;</li> <li>- Ngāti Pūkenga;</li> <li>- Hauraki-affiliated iwi and hapū (see Part One);</li> <li>- Te Arawa-affiliated iwi and hapū (see Part One); and</li> <li>- Tauranga Moana Iwi Collective (see Part One).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Kaimai Mamaku Place is significant to the iwi of the Tainui/Matawhaorua, Te Arawa and Mataatua waka.</li> <li>• For many generations, the area has sustained tangata whenua, who draw strength and identity from their relationships with the maunga, ngahere and awa.</li> <li>• Many of the maunga here, including Te Aroha and Karangahake, are sacred and retain a deep spiritual significance to tangata whenua. The protection of the ngahere, animals and awa is essential to preserving their mauri and wairua.</li> <li>• Wāhi tapu, pā sites, historic places and trails are evident throughout the Kaimai Range, illustrating the importance of the pae maunga to early Māori as a place of refuge, an important trading route, and a source of kai/food and other materials of cultural importance.</li> </ul>





Karangahake Gorge. Photo: Crave Photography



## 4.3.2

## Natural values

## Values

- **Priority management units:** There are six priority management units within the Kaimai Mamaku Place: Waipare and Kuhatahi Streams, Mangorewa Ecological Area, Kaharoa, Ngatukituki Forest Sanctuary, Rotoehu and Mokaihaha. These areas are prioritised because of the indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems they support, including kauri ngahere, red beech (*Fuscospora fusca*) and silver beech ngahere, podocarp-tawa (*Beilschmiedia tawa*) ngahere, North Island kōkako and North Island kākā (*Nestor meridionalis*) (see Appendix 5).
- **Important catchments:** A significant number of awa and cold puna/springs that originate from within these ngahere drain into Tauranga Harbour, the Firth of Thames, the Bay of Plenty coast and the Rotorua lakes. The catchment sustains the headwaters for much of the Paeroa, Te Aroha, Katikati, Tauranga and Matamata municipal drinking water supplies, as well as the Kaimai hydroelectric power scheme (see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place). Hot puna can be found at Katikati, Matamata and Te Aroha.
- **Threatened flora:** Threatened flora are present at multiple scattered localities in this Place. These include piriangi / red mistletoe (*Peraxilla tetrapetala*), stout water milfoil (*Myriophyllum robustum*), king fern (*Ptisana salicina*), thick-leaved kōhūhū (*Pittosporum kirkii*) and willow-leaved maire (*Mida salicifolia*). Dactylanthus is also known from the Mamaku Plateau south of State Highway 5 (see Appendix 6).
- **Threatened and at-risk fauna:** Nationally significant kōkako populations exist in some ngahere. Small, discrete populations of the at-risk pepeketua / Hochstetter's frog (*Leiopelma hochstetteri*) are found scattered throughout the northern two-thirds of the Kaimai Range and in the Otawa Sanctuary Area near Te Puke. Pekapeka / long-tailed bats (*Chalinolobus tuberculatus*) are present in all of the main ngahere, along with the threatened striped skink (*Oligosoma striatum*; recorded on Te Aroha) and some rare invertebrates, including Te Aroha stag beetle (*Geodorcus auriculatus*) and peripatus. Pekapeka / short-tailed bats (*Mystacina tuberculata*) are found in the Mokaihaha and Opuiaki ecological areas. North Island brown kiwi, kākā and kārearea / New Zealand falcon (*Falco novaeseelandiae*) are also present.
- **Unusual species compositions:** Some unusual species compositions are present in this Place, including New Zealand's only example of silver beech and kauri growing together in the montane zone. The presence of other conifer species, such as yellow silver pine (*Lepidothamnus intermedius*), pāhautea / kaikawaka / New Zealand cedar (*Libocedrus bidwillii*), mountain toatoa (*Phyllocladus alpinus*) and pink pine (*Halocarpus biformis*), makes the ngahere composition unique and highly significant. Northern ngahere in this place also mark the northern limits of red and silver beech and the southern limit of tōwai (*Weinmannia sylvicola*) (see Appendix 3).
- **Kauri ngahere:** The southern ngahere mark the southern limit of naturally occurring kauri ngahere (see Appendix 3). This is the only region within the natural distribution of kauri that is free of kauri dieback disease.
- **QEII and Ngā Whenua Rāhui:** There are registered QEII covenants and Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata within the Kaimai Mamaku Place. These play an important role in conservation, including providing connectivity between ngahere fragments and areas of public conservation lands and waters.

<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> Kauri dieback disease presents a significant threat to the health of kauri ngahere.  <b>Opportunity:</b> This Place is currently free of kauri dieback disease. Preventing the establishment or spread of this disease is critical for minimising damage to kauri trees and the habitat they provide and drives many of the decisions for the ongoing management of the kauri ngahere in this Place. Significant progress has already been made in this region by closing tracks, following a public consultation process, installing new wash stations and completing all required capital upgrades to tracks. Iwi as kaitiaki are partnering in these efforts by using a range of tools to manage the risk of kauri dieback disease, such as placing rāhui on ngahere.</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> Pest mammals such as deer (<i>Cervidae</i>), goats (<i>Capra aegagrus hircus</i>), possums (<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>), pigs (<i>Sus scrofa</i>), stoats (<i>Mustela erminea</i>), rats (<i>Rattus spp</i>), mice (<i>Mus musculus</i>) and feral cats (<i>Felis catus</i>) have had significant damaging impacts on the flora and fauna of this Place and are increasing in numbers. Most of the threatened species in this Place are remnant populations that are at risk of local extinction without the timely implementation of animal control, and other species are also at risk of serious decline if pest animal control is not addressed.  <b>Opportunity:</b> Increased and effective pest control, including through the use of new innovative methods, could reverse the declines in native flora and fauna populations in this Place. This can be seen in locations where pest control is active, such as the Otanewainuku Forest Conservation Area, Ottawa Sanctuary Area, Kaharoa Conservation Area, Rotoehu Forest Conservation Area and Mokaihaha Ecological Area, where native flora and fauna populations are showing signs of recovery. Working more with others to undertake pest and wild animal management could also provide an opportunity to expand managed areas and improve species and ecosystem health. The Department is working with the Manaaki Kaimai Mamaku Forum on numerous initiatives, including a multi-pest management control programme plan across the Kaimai Range. There is an active hunting community in this Place who could be harnessed to help achieve conservation outcomes through education and collaborative initiatives.</p> <p>c) <b>Issue:</b> The fragmentation and isolation of smaller areas of ngahere through subdivision, roading, agriculture, urbanisation and other development typically results in lower quality ecosystems compared with larger areas.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Kaimai Mamaku ngahere and smaller remnants of ngahere to the east, such as the Otanewainuku Forest Conservation Area, Oropi Forest Conservation Area, Ottawa range (Ottawa Sanctuary Area, Conservation Area No 4 Road and Ottawa Scenic Reserve), Rotoehu Forest Conservation Area and Kaharoa Conservation Area could, if connected by corridors of suitable habitat and surrounding forested areas, act as ecological networks, enhancing biodiversity and catchment protection in the region.</p> <p>d) <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department works with active groups of volunteers and partners at several sites, including the Kaharoa Conservation Area, Otanewainuku Forest Conservation Area, Mokaihaha Ecological Area, Aongatete in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, the Ottawa range, Rotoehu Forest Conservation Area and Dansey Road Scenic Reserve. Much of this work is primarily focused on the protection of remnant or, in one instance, translocated kōkako populations. Increasing collaboration and cooperation among current and future community groups could support their long-term capacity and sustainability to continue progress towards healthy ngahere and self-sustaining kōkako populations.</p> <p>e) <b>Issue:</b> Dama wallabies are reducing ngahere health in the southern areas of this Place and in the Rotoehu Forest Conservation Area by browsing on the understorey and reducing food sources and habitat for native species.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department works closely with the Bay of Plenty and Waikato regional councils to control dama wallaby populations. It is critical that this work continues and is expanded.</p> <p>f) <b>Issue:</b> Wild deer are starting to invade relatively intact areas of the Kaimai Mamaku Forest Park which, until recently, had remained free of these pest animals.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to manage deer to very low levels in these areas of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, as well as to prevent the spread of deer north into the Coromandel Forest Park.</p>
--	--

<b>Policies</b>	<p>4.3.2.1 Protect kauri ngahere and prevent the introduction or spread of kauri dieback disease by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) continuing to work in partnership with iwi;</li> <li>b) continuing to work collaboratively on joint agency programmes;</li> <li>c) controlling pest animals that act as disease vectors;</li> <li>d) trialling and implementing evidence-based initiatives to prevent or control the spread of the disease and to influence visitor behaviour in kauri ngahere; and</li> <li>e) implementing the temporary or long-term quarantine or closure of areas of public conservation lands and waters.</li> </ul> <p>4.3.2.2 Actively support the collaborative development and implementation of a multi-pest management control strategy and programme plan across the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park to reduce pest numbers across the whole park and in surrounding areas.</p> <p>4.3.2.3 Review current hunting access provisions, including permit conditions, where restrictions are necessary to protect kauri ngahere and reduce the risk of kauri dieback disease or other biosecurity threats.</p> <p>4.3.2.4 Support initiatives to create ecological corridors within the Kaimai Mamaku Place that connect important habitats for biodiversity protection.</p> <p>4.3.2.5 Work with tangata whenua and conservation groups to advocate for kōkako and implement the Kōkako Recovery Plan<sup>2</sup> in the Kaharoa Conservation Area, Otanewainuku Forest Conservation Area, Mokaihaha Ecological Area, Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park and Rotoehu Forest Conservation Area.</p> <p>4.3.2.6 Continue to work collaboratively with tangata whenua, the Waikato Regional Council and the Bay of Plenty Regional Council to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) prevent the further spread of dama wallabies in the Kaimai Mamaku Place;</li> <li>b) progressively reduce dama wallaby populations in the Rotoehu Forest Conservation Area; and</li> <li>c) prevent dama wallaby establishment in the Mokaihaha Ecological Area and other public conservation lands and waters where wallabies are not currently established.</li> </ul> <p>4.3.2.7 Contain and reduce the deer populations in priority places in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park.</p>
-----------------	--

<sup>2</sup> Innes, J.; Flux, I. 1999: North Island kokako recovery plan 1999–2009. Threatened Species Recovery Plan 30. Department of Conservation, Wellington. 32 p.  
[www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/tsrp30.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/tsrp30.pdf)

4.3.3 Historic values	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Māori cultural history:</b> The Kaimai Mamaku Place has a strong and recognised cultural history. Many traditional Māori trails, wāhi tapu and pā sites are scattered throughout, and historic places are also found here that are representative of settlement and trading in the area.</li> <li>• <b>Industrial heritage:</b> The northern zone of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park is nationally recognised for its retention of outstanding examples of the country's industrial heritage. Relics of quartz gold mining and the kauri timber industry, such as driving dams, bush tramways, log chutes and mill sites, are well preserved here. The Victoria Battery was the largest gold ore crushing battery in New Zealand and is one of many local examples of the country's gold mining heritage, with others including the Talisman and Woodstock batteries.</li> <li>• <b>Nationally significant sites:</b> Two sites in this Place are identified as Heritage Icon sites (Exceptional Heritage Places): the Karangahake Gorge Mines and the Waitawheta Mill and Tramway. The histories of these sites are well documented and provide compelling stories of the industrial heritage of this Place and New Zealand.</li> <li>• <b>Kaimai Heritage Trail:</b> The Department has linked some of these historic sites through the Kaimai Heritage Trail, which enables visitors to experience and learn about an important part of New Zealand's history.</li> <li>• <b>Other sites:</b> Locally and regionally significant timber milling historic sites can be found at Whakamārama, Wharawhara and Ngamuwahine but are yet to be developed and interpreted.</li> <li>• <b>Actively conserved sites:</b> This Place contains many of the region's actively conserved historic sites. See Appendix 10 for further details.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p><b>a) Issue:</b> The story of European settlement is well told in places, but many untold stories of Māori history remain. Tangata whenua have expressed a strong desire to manaaki/conservate their land, particularly wāhi tapu. <b>Opportunity:</b> The opportunity exists to improve storytelling at existing sites and travel routes, such as at Wairere Falls and the Karangahake Gorge, to provide greater interpretation of their cultural significance.</p> <p><b>b) Opportunity:</b> The Kaimai Heritage Trail could be further developed to provide a regional resource that enables tourism and economic opportunities (refer to section 4.3.4: Recreation values below).</p> <p><b>c) Issue:</b> The Karangahake Gorge and Waitawheta and Wairongomai river valleys are popular visitor destinations, and visitor numbers are continuing to increase. This is placing pressure on historic sites, which is likely to cause damage to them over time. Car parking and traffic issues are also occurring at these sites. <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department intends to work with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders to address issues associated with the popularity of these areas (refer to section 4.3.4: Recreation values below).</p> <p><b>d) Opportunity:</b> A cluster of sites at Karangahake (including the Karangahake mine area (Crown Track /Windows Walk), Karangahake Gorge Historic Walkway, Victoria Battery and Waikino Railway Station) and in the Waitawheta River valley (including the old mill site adjacent to the Waitawheta Hut site) have been identified as nationally significant Historic Icon sites. The Department is seeking Tohu Whenua status for these sites to reflect their importance in New Zealand's history.</p> <p><b>e) Opportunity:</b> There is potential for the Department to recognise more Historic Icon sites in this Place to increase the profile of historic resources.</p>

<b>Policies</b>	4.3.3.1	Protect and tell the stories of priority sites within the Kaimai Mamaku Place that are of special historical and cultural significance, including those that are currently not well known, in collaboration with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders.
	4.3.3.2	Work with tangata whenua to establish one or more east–west track connections over the Kaimai Range, following traditional Māori routes.
	4.3.3.3	Support the Tohu Whenua programme and actively pursue Tohu Whenua status at Karangahake (including the Karangahake mine area (Crown Track / Windows Walk), Karangahake Gorge Historic Walkway, Victoria Battery and Waikino Railway Station) and at the Waitawheta River valley (including the old mill site adjacent to the Waitawheta Hut site). If successful, develop and implement a plan to protect these places and clearly tell their stories.
	4.3.3.4	Support proposals to recognise sites within the Kaimati Mamaku Place as Historic Icon sites.

<b>4.3.4</b>	<b>Recreation values</b>
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Central location:</b> The ngahere of the Kaimai Mamaku Place are within a 2-hour drive of the large population bases of Rotorua, Tauranga, Hamilton and Auckland. Therefore, this Place provides an opportunity to showcase a wide range of values to many visitors.</li> <li>• <b>Demand for short walks:</b> The highest demand for recreation opportunities is for short-walk experiences at a few key sites in the north of this Place, primarily in the Karangahake area.</li> <li>• <b>Range of experiences available:</b> There are several entry and exit points to the Kaimai Mamaku ngahere that provide easy access to a variety of recreation experiences, ranging from short walks to multi-day routes. In the northern part of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, heritage-themed and high-quality, family-friendly walking tracks can be easily accessed from the neighbouring towns of Te Aroha, Paeroa and Waihi, and Dickey Flat Campsite is an easily accessible family-friendly campsite. The increasingly popular Hauraki Rail Trail also runs through the northern part of the Park, connecting Waikino, Paeroa and Te Aroha. These experiences are concentrated in the Karangahake Gorge and the Waitawheta and Wairongomai river valleys. In the central part of the Park, hunters and more experienced trampers can enjoy backcountry experiences. In the southern parts of the Park, around the Mamaku Plateau, there is minimal provision for recreational use as effort is concentrated on protecting biodiversity values.</li> <li>• <b>Sites showcasing industrial heritage:</b> The Karangahake, Waitawheta and Wairongomai areas in the northern part of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park contain important sites associated with the gold mining and timber industries of the 19th and early 20th centuries, such as tramways, log chutes, and gold mining batteries and tunnels. Sites such as the Waitawheta Tramway Track have been identified as ‘Icon destinations’ (see Appendix 11), as they are high-profile and popular sightseeing, cycling and walking destinations that underpin national and international tourism.</li> <li>• <b>Gateway destinations:</b> There are several Gateway destination sites at this Place, such as the Wairongomai tracks, which offer accessible walks and tramps that pass by several significant sites around the lower Wairongomai goldfields. These are places that are managed primarily to introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allow them to learn about conservation (see Appendix 11).</li> <li>• <b>Wairere Falls:</b> The Wairere Falls Track in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park is becoming increasingly popular as a day walk through native ngahere, offering spectacular views of the Wairere Falls and out across the Hauraki Plains.</li> <li>• <b>Orokawa Bay:</b> The Orokawa Scenic Reserve is located near Waihi Beach and offers pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>)-fringed beaches, rock fishing and beautiful views from the walking tracks.</li> <li>• <b>Highly engaged community:</b> There is a high level of stakeholder engagement in this Place, with many keen and willing community groups and volunteers working with the Department to achieve conservation and recreation outcomes.</li> </ul>



<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p><b>a) Issue:</b> The emergence of kauri dieback disease is a significant threat to the natural values of this Place (see section 4.3.2: Natural values above), and the impact of potential protection mechanisms represents the most significant constraint on recreational activity in kauri ngahere.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department is working closely with partners on the kauri dieback strategy Kia Toitū He Kauri<sup>3</sup> to apply methods such as track realignments, water management and wash stations. There is an opportunity to look at other specific mechanisms to ensure that kauri ngahere in the Kaimai Mamaku Place are protected and the region remains free of kauri dieback disease.</p> <p><b>b) Issue:</b> The demand for easily accessible front-country sites is increasing and there is pressure on these sites, particularly those in the northern Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park around the Karangahake Gorge. This is placing pressures on facilities such as car parks, toilets and tracks and resulting in traffic management issues.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The alignment of spatial planning and increased collaboration between the Department, regional councils, territorial authorities and roading agencies would allow facilities to be positioned and managed in an integrated and cost-effective way so that visitors are drawn to a wider range of experiences rather than concentrated in current high-demand areas.</p> <p><b>c) Issue:</b> The impact of increasing visitor numbers on the environment has been raised as a concern by tangata whenua and the community.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department is working closely with tangata whenua on a Kaimai–Mamaku Recreation Strategy to ensure that recreational demands are addressed in such a way as to protect tangata whenua values and ensure conservation outcomes are not compromised.</p> <p><b>d) Issue:</b> Unauthorised mountain biking and/or four-wheel driving is occurring in the Otanewainuku Forest Conservation Area and in parts of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, such as on the Tuahu Track, where measures to minimise the risk of kauri dieback disease are being compromised. Conflict with other users is also occurring, and ecological restoration initiatives that are being undertaken by the community in partnership with the Department are being adversely impacted.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department can clearly identify sites where mountain biking is allowed in the relevant CMS or conservation management plan, on the Department’s website, through signage and by other means.</p> <p><b>e) Opportunity:</b> Facilities and the track at Wairere Falls could be upgraded, and the site could be re-classified as a ‘Great Short Walk’ to increase awareness and appropriate use of the site.</p> <p><b>f) Issue:</b> Thompson’s Track / Te Ara o Maurihero is an unformed legal road traversing the middle of the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park. The track is managed by the Western Bay of Plenty District Council on the eastern side of the Kaimai Range and the Matamata Piako District Council on the western side. Parts of the track are to be vested in Ngāti Hinerangi through their settlement. The track is utilised by four-wheel-drive vehicles, which are degrading its condition, causing erosion and sedimentation in the adjacent Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park, and conflicting with other user types.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The location of this track means that it could provide for a wider range of recreational uses than its current state allows for.</p>
--	--

<b>Policies</b>	<p>4.3.4.1 Protect kauri ngahere and avoid introducing or spreading kauri dieback disease by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) upgrading or realigning tracks, or restricting or closing recreational access/facilities where necessary;</li> <li>b) not granting or suspending concessions where necessary; and</li> <li>c) not reclassifying or upgrading existing assets or building new assets in kauri ngahere unless the risk of spreading kauri dieback disease can be avoided.</li> </ul> <p>4.3.4.2 Identify, provide and maintain a range of outdoor recreation opportunities in this Place that are consistent with Policy 3.3.2.1 in Part One and the Kaimai–Mamaku Recreation Strategy.</p> <p>4.3.4.3 Continue development of the Kaimai Heritage Trail by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) improving the profile of the trail;</li> <li>b) increasing opportunities for visitors to interact with the historic heritage and stories of the area; and</li> <li>c) better distributing visitors across the facilities.</li> </ul> <p>4.3.4.4 Work with tangata whenua, regional councils, territorial authorities and roading agencies to sustainably manage visitors and to maximise the quality and safety of the visitor experience in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park.</p> <p>4.3.4.5 Seek to have the Wairere Falls Track identified as a Great Short Walk or similar national classification.</p> <p>4.3.4.6 Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park and Conservation Area – Waikino (Strawbridge) in accordance with Policy 10.2.5 and the policies listed in Table 10.2.1: Aircraft criteria for aircraft landings in the Orange Zone in Part Three.</p> <p>4.3.4.7 Engage with iwi, the Western Bay of Plenty District Council and the Matamata Piako District Council on the current and future use of Thompson’s Track to explore opportunities for better management and a wider range of recreational uses.</p>
-----------------	--

<sup>3</sup> Ministry for Primary Industries 2014: Kia Toitū He Kauri: keep kauri standing: New Zealand’s strategy for managing kauri dieback disease. Ministry for Primary Industries, Wellington. 28 p. [www.kauridieback.co.nz/media/1393/kauri-diebackstrategy-2014-final-web.pdf](http://www.kauridieback.co.nz/media/1393/kauri-diebackstrategy-2014-final-web.pdf).



Kauri Kaimai. Photo: Crave Photography

## Milestones for the Kaimai Mamaku Place

Natural values	Historic values	Recreation values
<p><b>Landscape-scale ecological restoration</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contributed to the development of a landscape-scale pest animal control plan for the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park (year 1).</li> <li>Commenced landscape-scale ecological restoration (year 4).</li> <li>Established ongoing landscape-scale ecological restoration (years 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Kōkako populations</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maintained or increased kōkako numbers at Kaharoa, and increased kōkako numbers at Mokaihaha, Opuiaki, Otanewainuku and Rotoehu (year 4).</li> <li>Maintained or increased kōkako numbers at Kaharoa, and further increased kōkako numbers at Mokaihaha and Opuiaki Ecological Areas, Otanewainuku and Rotoehu Forests (year 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Kauri dieback disease</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implemented track closures where necessary to protect kauri ngahere from kauri dieback disease (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> <li>Protected kauri ngahere from kauri dieback disease (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol>	<p><b>Interpretation at significant sites</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Partnered with tangata whenua to actively tell their stories at Wairere Falls, Otanewainuku Forest Reserve and Ōtawa Maunga (year 4).</li> </ol> <p><b>Historic sites</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Developed an interpretation plan for potential Tohu Whenua sites at Karangahake and Waitawheta that tell the cultural narrative (year 1).</li> <li>Developed a Karangahake Concept Plan to prepare for its designation as a Tohu Whenua site (year 1).</li> <li>Implemented additional interpretation at Tohu Whenua sites (years 1 &amp; 4).</li> <li>Implemented projects identified in the Karangahake Concept Plan to enhance visitor experience and provide adequate facilities (year 4).</li> <li>Installed additional storytelling and interpretation at Wairere Falls (year 4).</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ancestral routes</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Explored opportunities with tangata whenua and identified at least one route for development as a historic ancestral track (year 4).</li> <li>Constructed and opened at least one east-west walking track across the Kaimai Range (year 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Range of recreation opportunities</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Developed and submitted a business case for Wairere Falls to become a Great Short Walk (year 1).</li> <li>Undertaken track upgrades at Wairere Falls to the Great Short Walk standard (year 4).</li> </ol>



## 5. Waiariki Place

**He waka eke noa.**

**A canoe that we are all in with no exception –  
we are all in this together.**

The origin of the volcanic and geothermal activity in the Waiariki Place is told in the legend of explorer Ngātoroirangi, who climbed Mount Tongariro to gain a view of the surrounding land and claim it for his people. On the snow-clad summit, Ngātoroirangi was overcome by a bitter south wind and forced to call on his sisters in Hawaiki for help. They sent the fire gods Te Pupu and Te Hoata, who travelled underwater from Hawaiki with the ahi tipua / volcanic fire, surfacing at Whakaari/White Island (known as Te Puia Whakaari), Rotorua and several other places and bursting out at Tongariro to warm Ngātoroirangi. At every place where they emerged en route, these gods left fire, which is still seen today in various geothermal features.

### 5.1 Overview

For generations, tangata whenua have regarded the Rotorua geothermal resource as a gift from the atua/gods, calling it waiariki – water of the gods. The Waiariki Place has special significance not only as the birthplace of tourism in New Zealand but also as a landscape where tangata whenua are revitalising their kaitiakitanga over culturally significant lands, leading conservation initiatives and tourism development. It consists of geothermal sites, mountainous volcanic landforms and indigenous ngahere, much of which were shaped by the 1886 Mount Tarawera eruption, the deadliest in the history of New Zealand settlement.

These volcanic and geothermal environments are some of the most distinctive in New Zealand and are of international conservation significance for their scientific, educational and aesthetic values. They feature the highest remaining concentration of naturally rare geothermal systems in New Zealand, which stretch from Mount Ruapehu to Whakaari/White Island and form part of the Taupo Volcanic Zone.



The Waiariki Place is rich in Māori culture and heritage, with one-third of the population being of Māori descent. Geothermal features with surface activity (such as geysers and hot pools) have traditional, cultural and historical significance for tangata whenua, and considerable mana was associated with tangata whenua whose lands included geothermal resources, further highlighting the strong spiritual associations of this Place.

The Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes are distinctive focal features of these volcanic and geothermal environments (see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place). They were mostly formed by volcanic activity and were once rich in indigenous fauna and flora that provided food, shelter and resources for tangata whenua and formed important transport routes throughout the area. Lake Rotorua/Te Rotorua nui ā Kahumatamomoe is the most well-known of the Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes and has Rotorua city situated on its shore.

Pre-1900, this Place was covered with podocarp-hardwood ngahere, wetlands and geothermal vegetation. However, volcanic activity, logging and land clearance since that time have reduced much of the indigenous vegetation, increasing the importance of the remaining ecosystems. Major tracts of indigenous ngahere occur in the Te Kopia Scenic Reserve (Paeroa Range), and near the Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes around Lake Tarawera and in the Makatiti Dome Scenic Reserve, which together are referred to as the Tarawera–Makatiti landscape. These are examples of ecosystems that are under increasing pressure from the invasion and spread of pest plants and animals.

A number of volcanic domes are also found in this Place, some of which are covered by regenerating indigenous vegetation. Prominent examples include Mount Tarawera, Putauaki (Mount Edgecumbe) and Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve, which are popular for scenic walks, providing 360-degree views of the region. These volcanic landforms are also linked to local tribal identity and mana for tangata whenua of the region.

Rotorua is the gateway to the Bay of Plenty. It is an internationally renowned tourist destination that utilises its natural attractions for recreation opportunities and unique cultural experiences, as well as an iconic destination for New Zealanders and the local community to recreate in, with strong community connection and involvement. The Department works to manage the increasing pressures of tourism in this region, including the expected increases in both the resident population and domestic and international visitors.

## 5.2 Outcomes

### **This section describes the outcomes being sought for this Place – what it will be like in 10 years' time.**

The public understand and value the nationally and internationally significant geothermal features of the Waiariki Place through the provision of information, education and advocacy. These features are recognised and respected as taonga for tangata whenua, are healthy, and sustain improving populations of indigenous flora and fauna.

Pressure from increasing visitor numbers is well managed, and ecosystems at high-use sites are recovering while continuing to provide high-quality visitor experiences. These sites encompass and promote their unique recreation experiences as well as an understanding of their significant conservation value.

The Department supports and works in partnership with tangata whenua, other agencies, concessionaires, private landowners and community conservation groups to achieve landscape-scale ecological restoration and ecosystem enhancement.

Geothermal areas at Te Kopia, Waiotapu, Waimangu, Parimahana, Maungaongaonga and Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain scenic reserves are protected from key threats and have a high degree of ecological integrity. Large areas of ngahere in the Te Kopia Scenic Reserve (Paeroa Range) and the Tarawera–Makatiti landscape have intensive pest management, supporting healthy, thriving ecosystems. The ngahere understorey, sources of kai and habitat for native species and indigenous cultural materials are improving, while the presence of dama wallaby populations and wilding conifers has decreased.

A multi-day visitor experience at Tarawera that incorporates the surrounding reserves has been developed in partnership with tangata whenua. This includes a network of tracks linking Lakes Tarawera, Rotomahana and Ōkareka, providing multiple access points and options for a range of visitor types and experience levels.



The significant historic and cultural stories at key recreation sites on public conservation lands and waters have been brought to life through interactive interpretations, and tangata whenua are telling their cultural stories to visitors.

Rotorua continues to be a gateway to the Bay of Plenty region, and national and international visitors also enjoy complementary alternative opportunities for recreation in satellite destinations.

Popular recreation sites, including the Lake Tarawera and Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain scenic reserves, are managed for significant increases in demand and offer a range of recreation experiences. These experiences are popular among the local community and visitors, who can enjoy access to high-quality cultural interpretation and visitor facilities, such as tracks, huts and campgrounds.

Visitor satisfaction has increased through the provision of the types of experiences visitors want and well-maintained and well-managed facilities on public conservation lands and waters. The Department is assisted in providing quality recreation opportunities through community leadership and management of visitor experiences and facilities.

The Te Arawa lakes are valued as the focal point of Rotorua city by the community and visitors, who enjoy unimpeded public access to their shores. Visitors to the Tarawera Landing Scenic Reserve, Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve, Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve, Rotomahana Conservation Area, Te Kopia Scenic Reserve and Te Tapahoro Recreation Reserve might occasionally encounter aircraft.



## 5.3 Values, issues and opportunities, and policies

5.3.1	Treaty of Waitangi relationships
<b>Treaty settlement information</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition set out agreements between the Minister of Conservation and claimant groups in recognition of their special associations with identified sites and specify the nature of their input into the management of those sites.</li> </ul>
<b>Tangata whenua within this Place</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tangata whenua with Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within the Waiariki Place include:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū through the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claims Settlement Act 2008, which provides for:                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition for the Matahana Ecological Area;</li> <li>• a whenua rāhui for the Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve;</li> <li>• part of the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve;</li> <li>• part of Mount Ngongotaha Scenic Reserve; and</li> <li>• Matawhaura (part of the Lake Rotoiti Scenic Reserve);</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Ngāti Rangiwewehi through the Ngāti Rangiwewehi Claims Settlement Act 2014, which provides for Deeds of Recognition for part of the Ruato Stream Conservation Area and Te Waerenga Scenic Reserve;</li> <li>- Raukawa through the Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, which provides for Deeds of Recognition for parts of Lake Ohakuri;</li> <li>- Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) through the Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) Settlement Act 2017, which provides for:                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition for the Rotoma Forest Conservation Area, Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve, Lake Tamarenui Wildlife Management Reserve, and those parts of the beds of the Tarawera and Rangitaiki rivers that are under Crown ownership; and</li> <li>• a whenua rāhui for the Parimahana Scenic Reserve;</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Ngāti Mākino through the Ngāti Mākino Claims Settlement Act 2012, which provides for a Deed of Recognition and whenua rāhui for the Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve;</li> <li>- Ngāti Awa through the Ngāti Awa Claims Settlement Act 2005, which provides for Deeds of Recognition for the Rangataiki and Tarawera rivers; and</li> <li>- Ngāti Rangiteaorere through the Ngāti Rangiteaorere Claims Settlement Act 2014, which provides for Deeds of Recognition for the Lake Rotorua Marginal Strip and Waiohewa Stream Marginal Strip.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Tangata whenua with no Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within this Place but whose rohe extend into this Place include:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Tapuika (Tapuika Claims Settlement Act 2014);</li> <li>- Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Ngāti Tūwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) Claims Settlement Act 2005);</li> <li>- Te Arawa (Te Arawa Lakes Settlement Act 2006);</li> <li>- Waikato-Tainui (Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010); and</li> <li>- Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa and Te Arawa (Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010).</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Other tangata whenua with ancestral lands in this Place that are at different stages of the Treaty settlement process are Te Whānau-ā-Apanui.</li> <li>• See section 2: Treaty of Waitangi relationships in Part One and Appendix 1 for more information.</li> </ul>



## Values

- a) Geothermal resources in this Place are highly regarded taonga that are of considerable importance to tangata whenua. Areas with surface geothermal activity were highly favoured for settlement, and considerable mana was associated with tangata whenua whose lands included geothermal resources.
- b) Sulphur and geothermal mud are valued for their medicinal properties, and geothermal minerals such as kōkōwai / red ochre were used as paints, wood preservatives and dyes.
- c) Wāhi tapu and historic sites of significance to tangata whenua are found throughout the rohe, alongside waterways, on high hilltops, and in areas of native ngahere and pine forestry.
- d) Tangata whenua are kaitiaki of geothermal resources. Mineral puna are known, named and recognised as wāhi tapu.
- e) Mount Tarawera and its surrounding areas are culturally significant for tangata whenua, as entire settlements were buried in volcanic ash and rubble at these sites during the Tarawera eruption in 1886.
- f) The Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes were heavily settled by tangata whenua in the 14th century due to the plentiful supply of kai, leading to many pā and wāhi tapu, battlegrounds, and kōiwi / human bones remaining here.
- g) The Lake Okataina Scenic Reserve is of cultural and historical significance, with evidence of 13 permanent or semi-permanent village sites, burial sites and rock art. It is managed by the Lake Okataina Scenic Reserve Board, which has a rich history and whose relationship with the Department has been held up nationally as an excellent example of Māori/Crown partnership in action.
- h) The Lake Rotoiti Scenic Reserve Board was one of the first Crown–Māori co-governance arrangements to be established in New Zealand. Set up in 1919, Ngāti Pikiao partly gifted and partly relinquished the control and management of lake-edge bush that is now contained in six scenic reserves (Lake Rotoiti, Waione Block, Hinehopu, Okere Falls, Te Akau and Kaituna), all of which are highly valued for their natural, scenic and historic heritage values.
- i) Diverse soils and microclimates saw the establishment of large kāinga and cultivations at sites such as Orakei Korako, Ohaki and Waiotapu. Tangata whenua traded unique materials of the rohe, such as kōkōwai and the clay pigment generated by geothermal activity.
- j) Extensive areas of ngahere in Tutukau and the Paeroa Range provide homes for plants and animals, healing rongoā/medicines, and resources for cultural materials.
- k) The shores of Lake Ōkareka, meaning ‘the lake of sweet food’, were a setting of Māori life where tangata whenua grew kūmara and fished the waters for whitebait (galaxiids) and kōura / freshwater crayfish (Paranephrops planifrons).
- l) The Tarawera River was a rich source of kai, as well as an important part of the social, spiritual and physical lifestyle for tangata whenua. It also provided the main route between coastal areas and Tarawera/Taupō from the time when the Arawa waka made a stop at To Atua O Te Po River near Matatā. This route was later used to transport kūmara, flour and harakeke/flax (Phormium tenax) merchandise by ship for trade in Auckland.



5.3.2	Natural values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Priority management units:</b> The Waiariki Place contains five priority management units: Te Kopia, Waikite, Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain, Waimangu and Waiotapu Scenic Reserves. These sites are known for their geothermal vegetation and broadleaved scrub and shrubland associations, which support threatened species such as geothermal ferns and prostrate kānuka (<i>Kunzea tenuicaulis</i>) (see Appendix 5).</li> <li>• <b>Variety of ecosystems and habitats:</b> This Place consists of a variety of ecosystems and habitat types, including volcanic domes, geothermal areas, lakes, native ngahere and wetlands. Examples include geothermally influenced prostrate kānuka scrub at Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve (see Appendix 3).</li> <li>• <b>Threatened species:</b> Ngahere, wetlands and geothermal areas are home to and provide valuable habitat for a variety of threatened and at-risk species, such as toutouwai / North Island robin (<i>Petroica longipes</i>), New Zealand cress (<i>Rorippa divaricata</i>) and pirangi / red mistletoe (see Appendix 6 for a list of threatened and at-risk species).</li> <li>• <b>Remnant ngahere:</b> Remnant reserves of podocarp–tawa-dominated ngahere reflect what used to cover much of the landscape. Northern rātā (<i>Metrosideros robusta</i>) also once dominated these ngahere, but the only remaining remnant stand in this Place is on the slopes of Makatiti Dome above Lake Ōkataina/Te Moana i kataina ā Te Rangitakaroro. Stands of pōhutukawa are found around the Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes – the only place in New Zealand other than Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) where pōhutukawa naturally occur inland – and hybrids with northern rātā are also present.</li> <li>• <b>Geothermal vegetation:</b> Geothermal plant species that are classified as nationally threatened or at risk include a range of orchids (e.g. red beard orchid <i>Calochilus robertsonii</i>), ferns and prostrate kānuka.</li> <li>• <b>Significant geological features:</b> There are several internationally and nationally significant geological features at this Place (see Appendix 9), including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Waimangu Geyser in the Waimangu Scenic Reserve, which was formed by the 1886 Mount Tarawera eruption and is the youngest geyser in the world;</li> <li>- Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve, which is significant in botanical and scientific terms, containing complex mixtures of vegetation associated with several craters and geothermal lakelets and having areas where geothermally heated ground steams amongst geothermal vegetation, highlighting its geographical origins; and</li> <li>- the fumaroles, steaming cliffs, craters, geyser, mud geyser and hot puna in the Te Kopia Scenic Reserve.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Waikite geothermal wetland:</b> The geothermal Waikite Valley (including the Waikite Valley Scenic Reserve and Waikite Wildlife Management Reserve) has significant biodiversity values, featuring one of New Zealand’s largest populations of soft fern (<i>Christella aff. dentata</i> (“thermal”)), as well as many other threatened plant species, including prostrate kānuka (<i>Cyclosorus interruptus</i>) and thermal ladder fern (<i>Nephrolepis flexuosa</i>). A range of fauna can also be found in the wetland, such as mātātā/fernbird (<i>Bowdleria punctata</i>), pūweto / spotless crane (<i>Porzana tabuensis</i>) and poaka / pied stilt (<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>).</li> <li>• <b>Lake Rotomahana:</b> The Lake Rotomahana Wildlife Refuge, also known as the ‘Warm Lake’, was the site of the geothermal ‘Pink and White Terraces’, which were considered the eighth wonder of the natural world before their destruction in 1886 by the eruption of Mount Tarawera. Today, this is the deepest of the Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes and has the world’s largest hot water spring on its shore.</li> <li>• <b>Waiotapu Scenic Reserve:</b> The Waiotapu Scenic Reserve is part of the Waiotapu geothermal field and is considered New Zealand’s most colourful thermal area. It is jointly managed with Ngāti Tahu – Ngāti Whaoa. This reserve contains a range of very significant features, including the Champagne Pool and extensive areas of prostrate kānuka shrubland.</li> <li>• <b>Waimangu Scenic Reserve:</b> The Waimangu Scenic Reserve is another internationally recognised geothermal area with significant geothermal features and vegetation, including volcanic crater roto, hot streams and puna, and large geothermal fern populations.</li> <li>• <b>Parimahana Scenic Reserve:</b> The Parimahana Scenic Reserve, situated behind Kawerau, is highly valued nationally for its rare geothermal ecosystem and the presence of threatened flora.</li> </ul>

<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p><b>a) Issue:</b> The fragile and unpredictable geothermal ecosystems in this Place are under threat and, in many cases, have disappeared or been modified as a result of a number of activities, including the extraction of geothermal energy, inundation of hydroelectric power development, alteration of the groundwater tables from drainage, grazing, forestry and pest plant encroachment (see Appendix 7). Geothermal ecosystems are an originally rare ecosystem type that is ranked as Nationally Endangered and are also a national priority for the protection of biodiversity on private land.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department could strengthen its presence as an advocate for the conservation of geothermal ecosystems.</p> <p><b>b) Issue:</b> A critical issue threatening the regenerating ngahere in this Place, particularly around the Tarawera–Makatiti landscape and in the Te Kopia Scenic Reserve (Paeroa Range), is the invasion and spread of pest plants and animals, including wilding conifers, old man’s beard (<i>Clematis vitalba</i>), possums and dama wallabies, which threaten to overwhelm and permanently alter the unique landscape.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department can be a key stakeholder and support active measures for the landscape-scale ecological restoration of this unique regenerating ngahere.</p> <p><b>c) Issue:</b> Dama wallabies are reducing the ngahere health by browsing on the understorey, which prevents their regeneration and reduces sources of kai and habitat for native species and indigenous cultural materials.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department is a key partner agency in the collaborative Regional Pest Management Plan for the Bay of Plenty region.</p> <p><b>d) Issue:</b> The Department has committed large amounts of resources into restoring threatened species and ecosystems in the Waikite geothermal wetlands, resulting in significant increases in populations of geothermal ferns, including soft fern, <i>Cyclosorus interruptus</i> and thermal ladder fern. However, grey willow (<i>Salix cinerea</i>) and royal fern (<i>Osmunda regalis</i>) are established plant pests here. Grey willow can dominate indigenous wetland vegetation and cause structural changes in waterways if not managed.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Te Kopia Road Conservation Area is home to a rare ecosystem that hosts geothermal features and vegetation. Reclassification of this area alongside other potential sites with significant value could provide additional protection. See Policy 10.1.9 and Appendix 12 for further information.</p> <p><b>e) Issue:</b> Increasing visitor numbers at the Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve have high potential to impact on the significant cultural and ecological values that are present.</p> <p><b>f) Issue:</b> Ongoing weed management and restoration are required in the Parimahana Scenic Reserve to maintain the threatened biodiversity values.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Parimahana Scenic Reserve could be cooperatively administered in collaboration with tangata whenua who manage the adjoining lands.</p>
<p><b>Policies</b></p>	<p>5.3.2.1 Advocate for the sustainable management and protection of geothermal ecosystems, including from the taking and use of geothermal fluid and energy and land-use activities that affect geothermal systems, through statutory processes under the Resource Management Act 1991 in collaboration with the Bay of Plenty and Waikato regional councils.</p> <p>5.3.2.2 Control key pest plant species such as grey willow, blackberry (<i>Rubus fruticosus</i>) and royal fern in the Waikite Valley Scenic Reserve and Waikite Wildlife Management Reserve to protect indigenous plant species, particularly geothermal ferns.</p> <p>5.3.2.3 Encourage and support the application of restoration methods used in the geothermal Waikite Valley in other areas of public conservation lands and waters and on private land in this Place in collaboration with tangata whenua, private landowners and conservation stakeholders.</p> <p>5.3.2.4 Manage pest plants, particularly wilding conifers, at all geothermal sites on public conservation lands and waters within the Waiariki Place, including the Te Kopia, Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain, Parimahana, Maungaongaonga, Waimangu, Waikite and Waiotapu scenic reserves.</p> <p>5.3.2.5 Manage a range of key pest plant species in established and regenerating ngahere throughout this Place, including at Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve, by working with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders.</p>



<b>Policies</b>	5.3.2.6	Support landscape-scale pest control in the Tarawera–Makatiti landscape and Te Kopia Scenic Reserve (Paeroa Range) with tangata whenua, regional councils and territorial authorities, and conservation stakeholders.
	5.3.2.7	Work with the Bay of Plenty and Waikato regional councils to control dama wallaby populations and support the Waikato Regional Pest Management Plan regarding wallaby management objectives.
	5.3.2.8	Work collaboratively with tangata whenua to effectively manage the impacts of increased visitor numbers at the Maunga Kākarama / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve to ensure the protection of biodiversity values at this site.
	5.3.2.9	Work with tangata whenua on future conservation programmes to protect the geothermal values of the Parimahana Scenic Reserve.

<b>5.3.3 Historic Values</b>	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Tarawera Trail:</b> This trail is a proposed Heritage Icon site (Exceptional Heritage Place). Mount Tarawera violently erupted in 1886, and this was the deadliest eruption in the history of New Zealand settlement, destroying several Māori villages within a 6-km radius and the world-famous Pink and White Terraces to form the area as we know it today.</li> <li>• <b>Rich Māori cultural history:</b> The Waiariki Place was initially settled by Māori of the Te Arawa iwi and their affiliates in the 13th and 14th centuries. There are many archaeological sites at this Place, particularly around geothermal areas and the Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes where many Māori settlements occurred, including defended pā, traditional sites, storage pits and wāhi tapu.</li> <li>• <b>The tourist city:</b> Rotorua was founded in the 1880s by the New Zealand Government as a town for tourists visiting the ‘hot lakes’, making it unique among New Zealand cities.</li> <li>• <b>Traditional geothermal uses:</b> Māori had many traditional uses of the geothermal resources in this Place, including cooking and bathing (see section 5.3.1: Treaty of Waitangi relationships above).</li> <li>• <b>Okere Falls Power Station:</b> Constructed between 1899 and 1901, the Okere Falls Power Station on the Kaituna River was the New Zealand Government’s first hydroelectric power scheme. It remains an actively conserved historic place for the district (see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place and Appendix 10).</li> <li>• <b>Pink and White Terraces:</b> There was a hub of tourism activity in and around Lakes Tarawera and Rotomahana in the 19th century, with the beauty of the Pink and White Terraces seeing tourists flocking to Rotomahana from all over the world to see what was considered the eighth natural Wonder of the World.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> Few cultural and historic sites are actively managed on public conservation lands and waters within the Waiariki Place – many reside on private land or were buried by the Tarawera eruption.</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> The tourist nature of this Place means there is a high risk of wāhi tapu being damaged by visitors who do not understand their cultural significance.</p>
<b>Policy</b>	<p>5.3.3.1 Work with tangata whenua, Tourism Bay of Plenty, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and conservation stakeholders to:</p> <p>a) enhance storytelling and interpretation at Lake Tarawera; and</p> <p>b) support the telling of culturally significant stories and the enhancement of interpretation at sites off public conservation lands and waters.</p>

5.3.4	Recreation values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Popular tourist destination:</b> The Waiariki Place is an internationally renowned destination where natural attractions are utilised for recreation and unique cultural experiences, including boating, bike riding, tramping, hunting and fishing, scenic recreation, and relaxation and therapeutic bathing in the thermal waters.</li> <li>• <b>Significant geological features:</b> This Place is an internationally renowned tourist and recreation destination, due partly to the nationally and internationally significant geological features and landforms that are unique to it (see Appendix 9).</li> <li>• <b>Popular sites:</b> The Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve, Te Rātā Bay (Hot Water Beach Rotorua) within the Rotomahana Conservation Area and the Tarawera Trail are key public conservation sites and facilities that form part of this high-profile visitor area, which is considered the birthplace of tourism in New Zealand. They provide memorable and unique visitor experiences for domestic and international visitors (see Appendix 11).</li> <li>• <b>Central location:</b> Rotorua’s unique attractions and location within the central North Island make it accessible for many visitors, both domestic and international. The city is the gateway to the wider region.</li> <li>• <b>Health and wellbeing:</b> Geothermal waters, mud and steam are linked to health and wellbeing and provide an avenue for the community and visitors to connect with the environment through these benefits.</li> <li>• <b>Recreation opportunities:</b> Reserves around Lake Tarawera provide a focus for recreation opportunities, including walking, tramping, camping, hunting, engaging with cultural stories and appreciating nature. Walking and camping opportunities are also provided in the nearby Lake Okareka Scenic Reserve, while lesser-known and visited opportunities for visitors to explore include the Te Kopia Scenic Reserve.</li> <li>• <b>Campsites:</b> There are five campsites in this Place, some of which are managed by third parties (tangata whenua and the community). These are popular with the local community and visitors, particularly families, and support the surrounding walking and tramping experiences by providing rest areas, facilities and accommodation.</li> <li>• <b>Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve:</b> This popular destination for mountain bikers, trampers and sightseers features two craters, regenerating native vegetation, bare-coloured and steaming ridges, and 360-degree views of the region.</li> <li>• <b>Tarawera Trail:</b> Visitors value the secluded and unique experience of the Tarawera Trail, which includes a lakeside walk to Te Rātā Bay on the southern shore of Lake Tarawera. Here, a geothermally heated hot puna meets the lake’s edge, causing steam to rise from its waters. Visitors can enjoy the natural hot pool experience in an area that is accessible by boat, aircraft and this nature walk. This site is very popular and the feature of the Department’s popular Hot Water Beach Campsite.</li> <li>• <b>Kaituna River:</b> The Okere River has been highly valued by the people of this area for centuries and has recently gained popularity for its recreation and adventure tourism opportunities. This world-class white-water river, which is set in an amazing native bush-clad gorge with stunning scenery and thrilling rapids, has now become a mecca for white-water rafting, kayaking and river sledging.</li> <li>• <b>Te Arawa lakes:</b> The Te Arawa lakes in the Rotorua area are popular locations for many recreation experiences, such as boating, which provides access to campsites, fishing and water sports. Waka ama / outrigger canoeing is an increasingly popular sport. The use of these lakes for tourism purposes, such as boat trips, has occurred since around 1840 and remains important today.</li> </ul>

<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> As visitor numbers increase, so too does the potential for adverse effects on indigenous ecosystems and species. The recreational and tourist use of geothermal areas can conflict with the conservation and maintenance of sensitive geothermal and natural vegetation.  <b>Opportunity:</b> Recreation opportunities can be managed alongside biodiversity values to mitigate potential issues. Rotorua acts as the gateway to the region and there are opportunities to increase visitor awareness of other recreation opportunities on and off public conservation lands and waters throughout the area.</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> Many structures along the shores of the Te Arawa lakes, such as boat sheds and jetties, are on or extend onto marginal strips managed by the Department. These structures can restrict public access and give the impression of exclusive use to private landowners.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to work collaboratively with the Te Arawa Lakes Trust, LINZ and the Bay of Plenty Regional Council to seek mutually desired outcomes that enable public access to the roto.</p> <p>c) <b>Issue:</b> Current services and infrastructure at Tarawera campsites in the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve are struggling to cope with increasing visitor pressures and use.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is potential for further development to occur in the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve and for this to become a significant destination for the community and visitors to experience a range of recreation opportunities.</p> <p>d) <b>Issue:</b> There are limited opportunities for visitors to engage with cultural experiences in this Place.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There are opportunities to enhance storytelling at cultural sites and to provide supporting conservation education and knowledge in collaboration with tangata whenua.</p> <p>e) <b>Issue:</b> Increasing visitor demand at present and into the future are posing increased risks to the culturally significant values of the Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department could work with tangata whenua to plan for and better manage the impacts of increasing visitor numbers.</p>
<p><b>Policies</b></p>	<p>5.3.4.1 Work with tangata whenua, user groups and conservation stakeholders to develop a multi-day trail network with overnight accommodation and interpretation around Lake Tarawera.</p> <p>5.3.4.2 Support and take active involvement in the development of a multi-day trail network and the provision of overnight accommodation and interpretation at the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve in collaboration with tangata whenua, user groups and conservation stakeholders.</p> <p>5.3.4.3 Work with tangata whenua at the Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) install interpretation at the summit;</li> <li>b) support the telling of significant cultural stories of their maunga; and</li> <li>c) collaboratively develop a visitor management strategy.</li> </ul> <p>5.3.4.4 Increase awareness and information for visitors to this Place of other recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters throughout the region in collaboration with Tourism Bay of Plenty and the i-SITE information network, tangata whenua, and concessionaires.</p> <p>5.3.4.5 Work in collaboration with the Te Arawa Lakes Trust, LINZ and the Bay of Plenty Regional Council to authorise, remove or manage unauthorised structures to improve public access to the Te Arawa lakes.</p> <p>5.3.4.6 Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve, Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve, Rotomahana Conservation Area, Te Kopia Scenic Reserve and Te Tapahoro Recreation Reserve in accordance with Policy 10.2.5 and the criteria listed in Table 10.2.1: Aircraft criteria for aircraft landings in the Orange Zone in Part Three.</p>





Rainbow Mountain Rotorua volcanic pool. *Neil Hutton Photography*





Rainbow Mountain Rotorua. Neil Hutton Photography

## Milestones for the Waiariki Place

Natural values	Historic values	Recreation values
<p><b>Geothermal feature protection</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reclassified the geothermal area of the Te Kopia Scenic Reserve to a reserve classification with higher protection status (year 4).</li> <li>2. Reclassified the Te Kopia Road Conservation Area to be part adjoining the reclassified Te Kopia Scenic Reserve (year 4).</li> </ol> <p><b>Wilding conifers</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Achieved zero density of seeding wilding conifers in the geothermal areas at:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Waimangu, Maungaongaonga and Parimahana scenic reserves (year 1);</li> <li>b) Waikite Valley and Te Kopia scenic reserves (year 4); and</li> <li>c) Waiotapu and Maunga Kākaramaea / Rainbow Mountain scenic reserves (year 7).</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Maintained all of the above sites at zero density of seeding wilding conifers in years 1–7 (year 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Goats</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Maintained goat populations at or near zero density on public conservation lands and waters within this Place (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10)</li> </ol>	<p>See section 3.5: Regional milestones in Part One.</p>	<p><b>Tarawera Trail</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Developed a multi-day walk on public conservation lands and waters around Lake Tarawera (year 4).</li> </ol> <p><b>Rotorua – gateway to the Bay of Plenty</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. Developed a campaign that promotes ‘lesser-known’ recreation sites that are easily accessible from Rotorua (year 1).</li> <li>8. Made information regarding ‘lesser-known’ sites available at i-SITEs and through other key promotional partners (year 4).</li> <li>9. Increased visitor numbers to satellite recreation sites that are easily accessible to Rotorua (years 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Maunga Kākaramaea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. Collaboratively developed a visitor management strategy for Maunga Kākaramaea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve (year 4).</li> <li>11. Obtained evidence that visitor satisfaction has increased from baseline visitor surveys in 2018 (year 4).</li> <li>12. Obtained evidence that visitors’ effects on the cultural and ecological values of public conservation lands and waters within this Place are managed (years 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol>



## 6. Whirinaki Surrounds Place

**Ma whero ma pango ka oti ai te mahi.**

**With red and black the work will be complete – if everyone does their part, the work will be complete.**

This refers to cooperation, with the colours relating to the traditional kōwhaiwhai patterns on the insides of meeting houses.

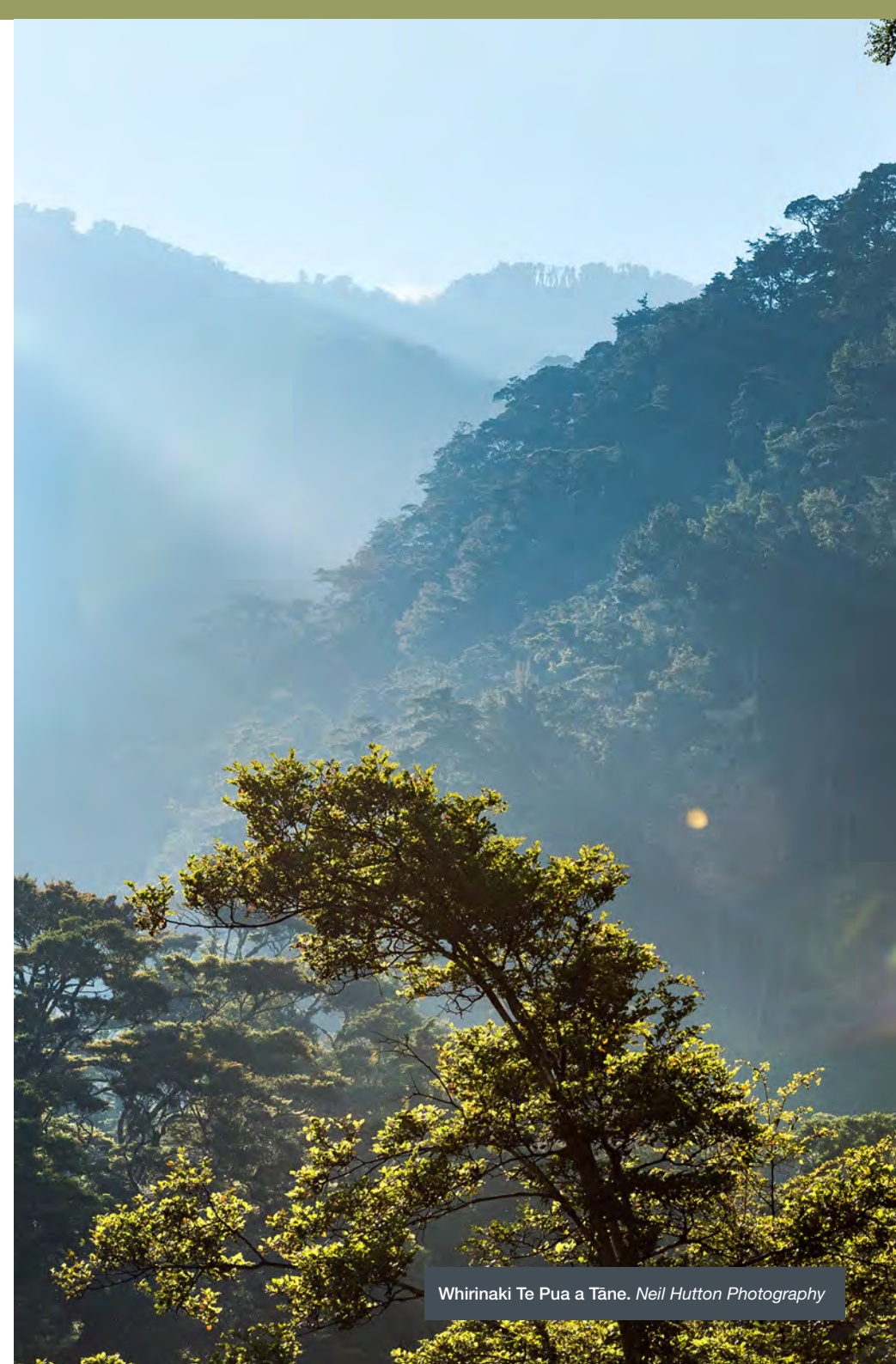
### 6.1 Overview

The Whirinaki Surrounds Place includes the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park, which is managed according to the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Management Plan,<sup>4</sup> the Waipunga and Kokomoka forests, and six parcels of public conservation lands and waters to the east, including Onepoto, Panekirikiri and Mangaone conservation areas. The ngahere in this Place stretch over 75 000 ha to form a boundary between the exotic conifer plantations of the Kaingaroa plateau to the west, Te Urewera to the east, Murupara to the north and the Napier–Taupō highway (State Highway 5) to the south.

This Place is known for its mixed indigenous podocarp ngahere, particularly its kahikatea (*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*) ngahere, which is one of only two remaining examples in the central North Island. These remnant ngahere are under threat from the high levels of damage caused by introduced pest animals, such as possums, deer and dama wallabies. However, they are highly valued both by tangata whenua and the community, who have strong aspirations for them to remain for future generations, providing habitat for many taonga species.

Significant awa in this Place flow east into the Bay of Plenty, including the Whirinaki and Rangitaiki rivers, which support many indigenous fish species (see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place). The northern area, west of the Whirinaki River, is composed of relatively low-lying rolling hill country, which differs markedly from the elevated rugged greywacke landscape of the Te Hoe and Waiiau catchments in the south at Maungataniwha.

<sup>4</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/policies-and-plans/conservation-management/whirinaki-te-pua-a-tane-cmp.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/policies-and-plans/conservation-management/whirinaki-te-pua-a-tane-cmp.pdf)



Indigenous frost-flat shrublands, also known as old tephra plains, form a significant and iconic ecosystem that exists exclusively in the central North Island and can be found in the higher elevation areas at the margins of the Waipunga Forest, Kokomoka Forest and Otangimoana Conservation Area. These shrublands are subject to year-round frosts, feature low-nutrient pumice soils, and are home to Nationally Vulnerable species and frost-hardy trees and lichens.

The ngahere in the southern blocks of this Place connect to the great Te Uruwera forested corridor and have played an important role in the lives of tangata whenua for generations. Tangata whenua are kaitiaki of these areas and have traditional relationships with the land, ngahere, awa, rongoā and other taonga. Tikanga embodies the respect of tangata whenua for the ngahere and resources, which have always been important for sustaining their physical and spiritual wellbeing. Today, the Whirinaki Surrounds Place remains an important archaeological and historic resource of cultural and spiritual value to tangata whenua, containing many pā, wāhi tapu and other sites of significance. The awa and ngahere offer tangata whenua and the community a range of recreation opportunities. Visitors are often surprised to learn that the logging of native ngahere ceased as recently as the mid-1980s following active campaigns by conservation groups. The public's efforts to protect the ngahere mean that visitors to this Place can enjoy a variety of different landscapes and native ngahere to recreate in, particularly backcountry opportunities such as hunting, tramping, mahinga kai / gathering food and fishing.

## 6.2 Outcomes

### **This section describes the outcomes being sought for this Place – what it will be like in 10 years' time.**

The awa and ngahere ecosystems in this Place, such as the Rangitaiki and Whirinaki rivers and Kokomoka and Waipunga forests, continue to improve and support healthy indigenous plant and animal communities. Regenerative aspirations for areas of podocarp ngahere have become a reality for tangata whenua and local communities, and examples of whio / blue duck (*Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos*) and kākā populations are found in the ngahere that surround and are contiguous to the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park.

The unique frost-flat environments in this Place have a heightened profile, and there is a better understanding and appreciation for their scenic and natural value. The increased management of pest species and improved coordinated management approach in these environments sees them in a thriving natural state. Where relevant, sites with high conservation value are reclassified to a higher protection status.

Pest animals, such as goats, have been reduced in the Mangaone and Panekirikiri conservation areas thanks to ongoing collaborative work, while dama wallabies continue to be excluded from the public conservation lands and waters here. Populations of the highly valued kererū / New Zealand wood pigeon (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*) are improving and, in some places, thriving, providing an effective indication of the positive effect that increased landscape-scale predator control is having. Pest plants have been contained in priority sites, and the spread of wilding pines is decreasing through active management.

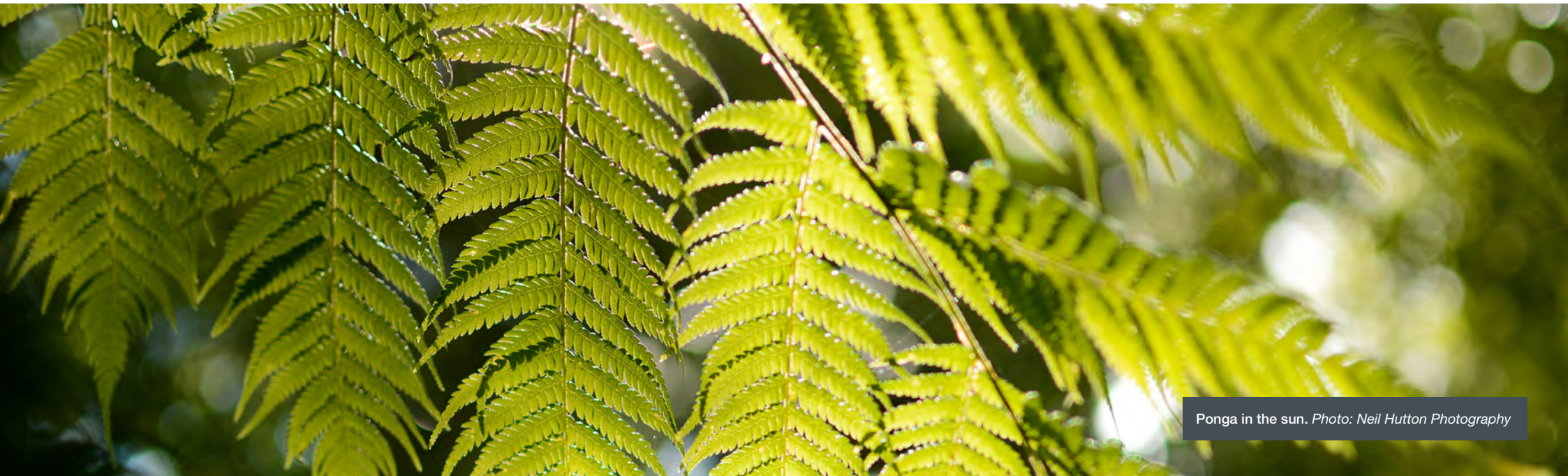
Visitors expect and enjoy a range of backcountry recreation experiences, including hunting, tramping and fishing, with occasional intrusions of noise, and visitor numbers are increasing.



### 6.3 Values, issues and opportunities, and policies

6.3.1	Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park
<b>Context</b>	<p>The Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park within the Whirinaki Surrounds Place has its own management plan – the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Management Plan – which contains outcomes and other specific provisions for the conservation park as required by the Conservation Act 1987 and Conservation General Policy 2005.<sup>5</sup></p> <p>This CMS contains the overarching vision for the region and outcomes for this Place, which include the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park. However, it does not repeat the information contained in the conservation management plan.</p>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p><b>a) Issue:</b> Management of the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park must be consistent with the relevant legislation, the Conservation General Policy 2005 and this CMS. Outcomes sought for this Park need to be integrated with the outcomes sought for surrounding areas and the wider region to ensure integrated management.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to establish a clear relationship between this CMS and the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Management Plan and to seek consistent management and integration of the surrounding areas and wider region.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>6.3.1.1 Manage the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park in accordance with its conservation management plan (including but not limited to the visitor management, aircraft and vehicles policies).</p> <p>6.3.1.2 Integrate management of the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park with other areas in the Whirinaki Surrounds Place.</p>

<sup>5</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf)



Ponga in the sun. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography



6.3.2	Treaty of Waitangi relationships
<b>Treaty settlement information</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition set out agreements between the Minister of Conservation and claimant groups in recognition of their special associations with identified sites and specify the nature of their input into the management of those sites.</li> </ul>
<b>Tangata whenua within this Place</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tangata whenua with Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within the Whirinaki Surrounds Place include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāti Whare through the Ngāti Whare Claims Settlement Act 2012, which provides for a joint governance role for Ngāti Whare and the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board through the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Management Plan; and</li> <li>- Ngāti Hineuru through the Hineuru Claims Settlement Act 2016, which provides: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition for the Kokomoka Forest, Rangitaki River Marginal Strip, Waipunga Forest and Waipunga River Marginal Strip; and</li> <li>• a whenua rāhui over the Waipunga Falls Scenic Reserve.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• Tangata whenua with no Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within this Place but whose rohe extend into this Place include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāti Manawa (Ngāti Manawa Claims Settlement Act 2012);</li> <li>- Central North Island Forestry Iwi Collective (Central North Island Forests Land Collective Settlement Act 2008); and</li> <li>- Ngāi Tuhoe (Tuhoe Claim Settlement Act 2014).</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Other tangata whenua with ancestral lands in this Place who are at different stages of the Treaty settlement process include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāti Hinerangi; and</li> <li>- Ngāti Ruapani ki Waikaremoana.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cultural significance:</b> The Whirinaki Surrounds Place has important cultural and spiritual values, as it contains numerous wāhi tapu and other sites of significance and provides habitat for many prized species of plants, birds and rongoā, including North Island kōkako, kahikatea and mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>).</li> <li>• <b>Natural resources:</b> Tangata whenua of this Place were reliant on the resources of the awa, ngahere, cultivations and lands in their rohe for their sustenance and wellbeing, leading to many significant wāhi tapu and mahinga kai.</li> <li>• <b>Te Tāpiri:</b> Te Tāpiri is valuable as it was the site of a battle in 1865. Many culturally significant sites are now located on private land or under forestry plantations.</li> <li>• <b>Heruiwi Block:</b> The Heruiwi Block Conservation Area is of special importance to tangata whenua and contains many historic settlements and sites of significance. There are large numbers of ancient sites such as kāinga, whare and wāhi tapu throughout the block.</li> <li>• <b>Kokomoka Forest:</b> The Kokomoka Forest was a site of concentrated settlement for tangata whenua in this Place. Many traditional walkways and tracks lead to the awa within the ngahere, which were important mahinga kai sites of fish species, including tuna/eels and kōura / freshwater crayfish.</li> </ul>





Frost flats Whirinaki Te Pua a Tāne. *Neil Hutton Photography*



Whirinaki twin giant podocarps. *Neil Hutton Photography*



6.3.3	Natural values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Priority management units:</b> There are two priority management units within the Whirinaki Surrounds Place: Rangitaiki Conservation Area and Lake Kiriopukae (see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place).</li> <li>• <b>High-density podocarp ngahere:</b> This Place is expressly valued for its high-density podocarp ngahere, which include tōtara (<i>Podocarpus totara</i>), rimu (<i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i>), miro (<i>Prumnopitys ferruginea</i>), mataī (<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>) and kahikatea. Their rare uncut state, size and density (up to 120 trees per hectare) have been critical to the survival of several threatened and at-risk species.</li> <li>• <b>Ecosystem and habitat types:</b> This Place consists of a variety of ecosystem and habitat types, including awa, native ngahere, frost flats and wetlands (see Appendix 3). These are home to several threatened and at-risk species, such as hypericum (<i>Hypericum minutiflorum</i>) and piriangi / red mistletoe.</li> <li>• <b>Healthy species populations:</b> Species such as whio, kākā, and pekapeka / long- and short-tailed bats have such healthy populations in this Place that they are now spreading out to a wider range of ngahere.</li> <li>• <b>Frost-flat environments:</b> Monoao (<i>Dracophyllum subulatum</i>)-dominated frost flats, which are only found in low-lying frost-prone sites in the central North Island, are prominent and valued as a naturally rare ecosystem type, supporting nationally threatened indigenous plant species. They also contain silver tussock (<i>Poa cita</i>) with associated kānuka shrublands in high-elevation areas where frosts can occur all year round. There are vast, intact frost-flat ecosystems in the Waipunga and Kokomoka forests and the Rangitaiki and Otangimoana conservation areas.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p><b>a) Issue:</b> Threats to public conservation lands and waters within this Place include the introduction and spread of invasive pest plant species, most notably wilding conifers (particularly lodgepole pine (<i>Pinus contorta</i>), climbing spindle berry (<i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>), heather (<i>Calluna vulgaris</i>), old man's beard, blackberry, broom (<i>Cytisus scoparius</i>), gorse (<i>Ulex europaeus</i>) and hawkweed (<i>Hieracium pilosella</i>)) (see Appendix 7).  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to work more closely with tangata whenua, communities, forestry managers and other conservation stakeholders to manage wilding conifers and other invasive pest plant species.</p> <p><b>b) Issue:</b> The ngahere sustain high levels of damage from introduced pest animals, such as possums and deer. The podocarp species are of fundamental importance to tangata whenua, making it essential that they survive into the future.  <b>Opportunity:</b> A further increase in landscape-scale pest animal control would offer increased conservation values.</p> <p><b>c) Issue:</b> Frost flats are under threat and at risk from:  pest animals, including rabbits (<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>) and hares (<i>Lepus europaeus</i>) that browse vegetation; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fire from natural and human causes;</li> <li>• surrounding land uses, including the use of fertiliser and nutrient runoff from adjoining farmland;</li> <li>• pest plants, such as wilding conifers and heather, due to the low stature and relatively open nature of the vegetation and the proximity of frost flats to exotic ngahere; and</li> <li>• climate change, which has the potential to alter the natural processes of frost-flat areas as seasonal temperatures rise, leading to increased weed encroachment and the establishment of tall native shrubs and trees, which will develop into ngahere.</li> </ul> <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to substantially raise the profile of these poorly understood ecosystems by reclassifying them, along with the highly valued Rangitaiki Conservation Area, as one unit with a land status that provides greater protection, such as an ecosystem-focused conservation park.</p>

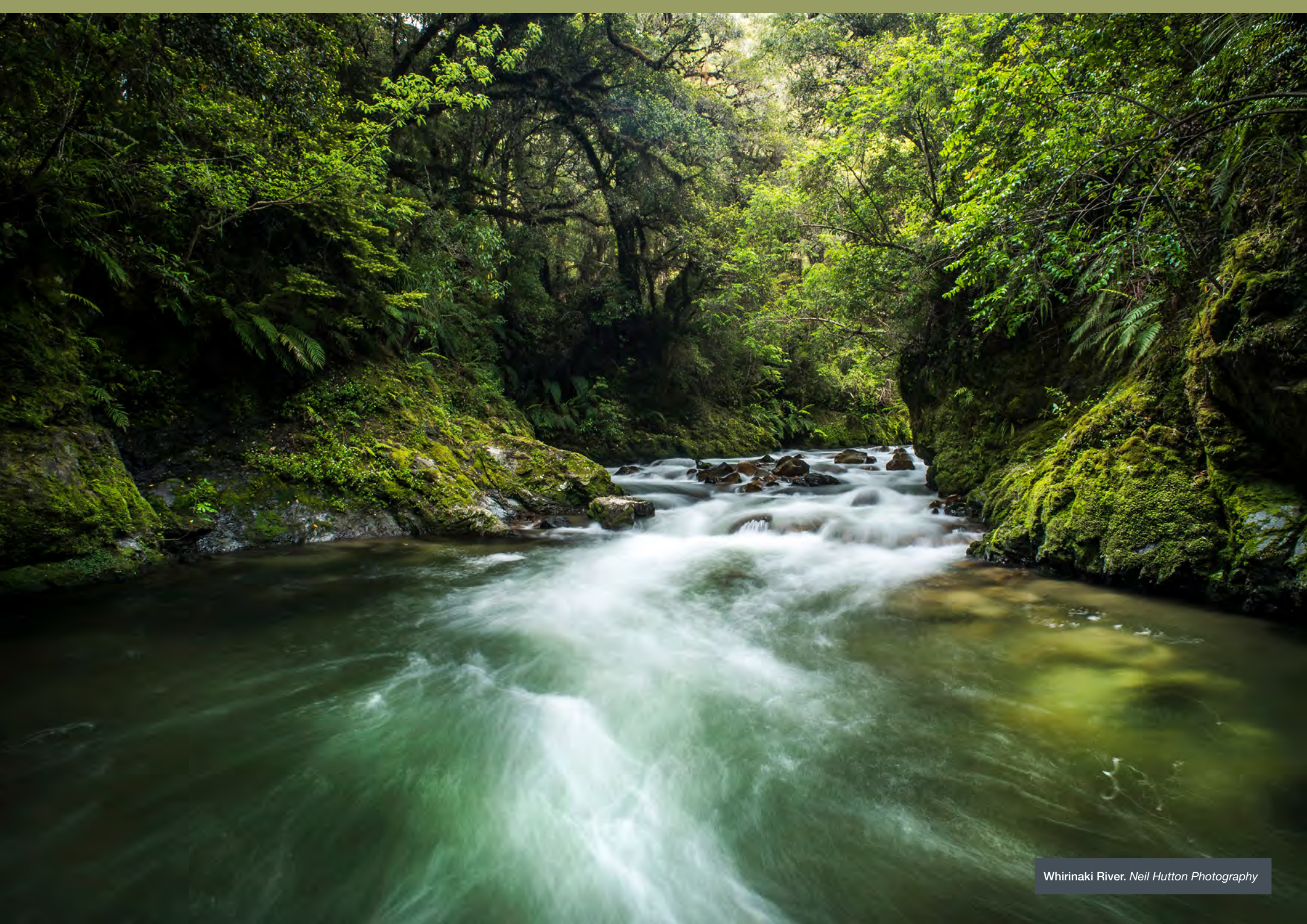


<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p><b>d) Issue:</b> Threats to public conservation lands and waters within this Place include the introduction and spread of invasive pest plant species, most notably wilding conifers (particularly lodgepole pine (<i>Pinus contorta</i>), climbing spindle berry (<i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>), heather (<i>Calluna vulgaris</i>), old man's beard, blackberry, broom (<i>Cytisus scoparius</i>), gorse (<i>Ulex europaeus</i>) and hawkweed (<i>Hieracium pilosella</i>)) (see Appendix 7).  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to work more closely with tangata whenua, communities, forestry managers and other conservation stakeholders to manage wilding conifers and other invasive pest plant species.</p> <p><b>e) Issue:</b> The ngahere sustain high levels of damage from introduced pest animals, such as possums and deer. The podocarp species are of fundamental importance to tangata whenua, making it essential that they survive into the future.  <b>Opportunity:</b> A further increase in landscape-scale pest animal control would offer increased conservation values.</p> <p><b>f) Issue:</b> Frost flats are under threat and at risk from:  pest animals, including rabbits (<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>) and hares (<i>Lepus europaeus</i>) that browse vegetation;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fire from natural and human causes;</li> <li>• surrounding land uses, including the use of fertiliser and nutrient runoff from adjoining farmland;</li> <li>• pest plants, such as wilding conifers and heather, due to the low stature and relatively open nature of the vegetation and the proximity of frost flats to exotic ngahere; and</li> <li>• climate change, which has the potential to alter the natural processes of frost-flat areas as seasonal temperatures rise, leading to increased weed encroachment and the establishment of tall native shrubs and trees, which will develop into ngahere.</li> </ul> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to substantially raise the profile of these poorly understood ecosystems by reclassifying them, along with the highly valued Rangitaiki Conservation Area, as one unit with a land status that provides greater protection, such as an ecosystem-focused conservation park.</p> <p><b>g) Issue:</b> Dama wallabies are a significant issue in the Mangaone and Panekirikiri conservation areas, where they browse on vulnerable native flora, trample vegetation and affect ngahere regeneration.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department intends to continue to support the Waikato and Bay of Plenty regional councils in their efforts to survey, control and reduce dama wallaby populations.</p> <p><b>h) Issue:</b> Goats are a significant issue in the Mangaone and Panekirikiri conservation areas, where they browse on vulnerable native flora, trample vegetation and affect ngahere regeneration.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department acknowledges the work of private landowners to maintain an eastern buffer (between the Waipunga Forest, Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park and Mangaone Conservation Area) to control goat numbers and prevent their entrance into the Conservation Park.</p> <p><b>i) Opportunity:</b> The success and knowledge gained from the establishment of healthy whio, kākā, and pekapeka / long- and short-tailed bat populations in the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park could be applied to increase populations of other species in adjoining and surrounding ngahere (e.g. kererū, which are a significant taonga to Ngāti Whare).</p> <p><b>j) Opportunity:</b> The Waipunga and Kokomoka forests and the Rangitaiki and Otangimoana conservation areas include rare frost-flat ecosystems of high conservation value. During the life of this CMS, the Department intends to investigate a relevant reclassification of these public conservation lands and waters alongside other potential sites with significant value. See Policy 4.1.6 and Appendix 12 for further information.</p>
--	---

<b>Policies</b>	6.3.3.1	Support increasing landscape-scale pest animal control within the Whirinaki Surrounds Place in collaboration with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders.
	6.3.3.2	Work with local hunters, private landowners, tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) manage goats in the Mangaone and Panekirikiri conservation areas;</li> <li>b) maintain a goat-free buffer south of the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park and Te Urewera; and</li> <li>c) undertake landscape-scale pest control to enable species such as kererū to establish in the ngahere within this Place and to protect nationally threatened species, including pekapeka / long- and short-tailed bat</li> </ul>
	6.3.3.3	Control wilding conifers and heather in the Waipunga and Kokomoka forests, Rangitaiki Conservation Area, Otangimoana Conservation Area, and Matea Road Scenic Reserve to protect natural values.
	6.3.3.4	Manage the frost flats in this Place by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) reclassifying the Waipunga and Kokomoka forests and the Otangimoana and Rangitaiki conservation areas as one unit to form an ecosystem-focused conservation park;</li> <li>b) investigating the addition of nearby frost-flat areas on the southern side of State Highway 5 from Tongariro to Taupō, particularly the Rangitaiki Conservation Area, to the proposed ecosystem-focused conservation park;</li> <li>c) raising the visibility, profile and awareness of the unique nature and scientific significance of frost flats to the region; and</li> <li>d) working with regional councils, territorial authorities and private landowners to control pest animals and plants.</li> </ul>
	6.3.3.5	Continue to work collaboratively with the Waikato and Bay of Plenty regional councils to prevent the introduction of dama wallaby into the Whirinaki Surrounds Place.

6.3.4 Historic values	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Battle for conservation:</b> Timber harvest and production were prominent in the Whirinaki Surrounds Place from the late 1920s to late 1970s both on Crown and Māori-owned land. Conflict over logging versus the preservation of such significant stands of native ngahere in 1978–79 saw the area become one of New Zealand’s most famous conservation battlegrounds and resulted in Whirinaki controversially being proclaimed a forest park in 1984.</li> <li>• <b>Famed Te Kooti:</b> Te Kooti, a spiritual leader who famously led his Māori followers in conflicts against colonising Europeans settlers, took refuge in this area in the late 1860s. ‘Te Kooti’s War’ was fought in the East Coast region and across the heavily forested central North Island and Bay of Plenty, bringing disturbance and conflict to the area. In some cases, tangata whenua in this Place were forced to resettle elsewhere, and Te Kooti took some members of the local tribes prisoner. Some of the sites he travelled to remain significant to the mana and identity of tangata whenua with links to the area.</li> <li>• <b>Frost-flat environment:</b> The harsh frost-flat environments in the Kokomoka and Waipunga forests were not inhabited but provided valuable travel routes to other areas in the low-lying northeastern part of this Place and beyond.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) <b>Issue:</b> Many sites of cultural significance for tangata whenua exist on private land or under forestry plantation in this Place.</li> <li>b) <b>Opportunity:</b> Collaborative work could be undertaken with tangata whenua, forestry managers and the local community to ensure that records of the locations and significance of historic and cultural heritage are current.</li> </ul>
<b>Policies</b>	See section 3.2.2: Regional policies in Part One.





Whirinaki River. Neil Hutton Photography



6.3.5	Recreation values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Visitor experience:</b> The range of experiences available in the Whirinaki Surrounds Place is valued by visitors, as people of different ages and abilities are catered for. These experiences vary from highly difficult backcountry tramping opportunities in Waipunga Forest to more accessible and family-friendly short walks, but it is the opportunity to walk through large stands of ancient podocarp ngahere that is most highly valued.</li> <li>• <b>Hunting:</b> Hunting is a valued activity not only for recreation but also to provide kai for families within the community and as a customary practice for tangata whenua.</li> <li>• <b>Waipunga Forest:</b> The Waipunga Forest area and the Upper Matakuhia Hut provide skilled hunters and backcountry trampers with the opportunity to test their backcountry skills and immerse themselves in the solitude of nature.</li> <li>• <b>Kokomoka Forest:</b> The Kokomoka Forest area contains some roads that provide visitors and the community with access to four-wheel drive hunting and areas such as the Waipunga River, which is popular for tarauta / rainbow trout (<i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>) and brown trout (<i>Salmo trutta</i>) fishing.</li> <li>• <b>Rangitaiki River:</b> The Rangitaiki River offers fishing opportunities for all levels of ability in different areas of the awa.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p>a) <b>Opportunity:</b> There is capacity for the sustainable growth of tourism in the Whirinaki Surrounds Place, which would assist in relieving increasing visitor pressures in other centres. This Place offers both complementary and different types of recreation opportunities to other Places, such as the Waiariki Place. Visitors go to Rotorua to enjoy the geothermal and volcanic experiences, and there is an opportunity to make them aware of the nearby forested recreation experiences in the Whirinaki Surrounds Place.</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> Frost flats are at risk from uncontrolled visitor access. Camping causes fire risks and four-wheel-drive use causes damage to frost-flat values where drivers leave formed roads.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to raise the profile and better manage rare frost-flat environments.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>6.3.5.1 Produce and make available visitor guidelines and other information to educate visitors about the adverse effects recreation use can have on frost-flat environments.</p> <p>6.3.5.2 Increase awareness of recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters in this Place in collaboration with tangata whenua, Tourism Bay of Plenty and concessionaires.</p> <p>6.3.5.3 Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Waipunga Forest in accordance with Policy 10.2.5 and the criteria in Table 10.2.1: Aircraft criteria for aircraft landings in the Orange Zone in Part Three</p>

## Milestones for the Whirinaki Surrounds Place

Natural values	Historic values	Recreation values
<p><b>Frost-flat environments</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improved relationships with the forestry industry and concessionaires to advocate for the significance of this Place's unique frost-flat environments (year 1).</li> <li>2. Erected pou/columns, signage and interpretation at key visitor access points to educate the public and discourage damaging activities and uses within frost-flat environments in the Waipunga and Kokomoka forests (year 4).</li> <li>3. Reclassified the Rangitaiki and Otangimoana conservation areas and the Kokomoka and Waipunga forests to a land status with greater protection (year 4).</li> </ol> <p><b>Wilding conifers</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Achieved zero density of seeding wilding conifers in the Rangitaiki Conservation Area (year 4).</li> <li>5. Reduced the abundance of seeding wilding conifers by 85% from 2018 levels in the Waipunga and Kokomoka forests and the Otangimoana Conservation Area (year 10).</li> <li>6. Maintained all of the above sites at reducing densities of seeding wilding conifers (years 1–10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Dama wallaby</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. Ensured that the Whirinaki Surrounds Place remains free of dama wallabies (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Goat</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. Prevented goat populations from establishing in the Waipunga and Kokomoka forests (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol>	<p>See section 3.5: Regional milestones in Part One.</p>	<p>See section 3.5: Regional milestones in Part One.</p>



Ponga koru. Neil Hutton Photography





Raukumara Ranges. Neil Hutton Photography

## 7. Eastern Catchments Place

**Naku te rourou nau te rourou ka ora ai te iwi.**

**With your basket and my basket, the people will live – cooperation and the combining of resources will help us get ahead.**

Toikairākau was an important early ancestor of the Māori people, and it is in the Whakatane District and the wider Eastern Catchments Place that the greatest number of traditions relating to him can be found. His name means consumer of trees or ngahere kai, and there are many place names associated with him, including Te Puku-o-te-wheke (the centre of the octopus), just west of Whakatāne. The tentacles of the octopus symbolise the sphere of Toi's influence, while its centre indicates his home. In some traditions, he comes from Hawaiki, while in others he is indigenous to New Zealand. All, however, speak of his authority and prestige.

### 7.1 Overview

The Eastern Catchments Place is situated in the eastern part of the Bay of Plenty region, stretching from the Ōhiwa headland to Ōpōtiki and Te Kaha, and beyond to Cape Runaway. This Place is characterised by large tracts of remote, rugged ngahere, as well as smaller, accessible conservation areas that are close to settlements. It has the highest proportion of protected whenua in the region, with around 132 000 ha or 40% of the total area protected as public conservation lands and waters.

Tangata whenua have lived across this landscape since the great migrations, and there is a rich history of several iwi and affiliated hapū. Waiata/songs, whakapapa and pakiwaitara/legends embody and convey the history of their occupation, including the importance of the Raukūmara Range as both a mahinga kai area and a major thoroughfare. A significant amount of the land here is Māori owned, including the largest proportion of land in the region that is protected under Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata.



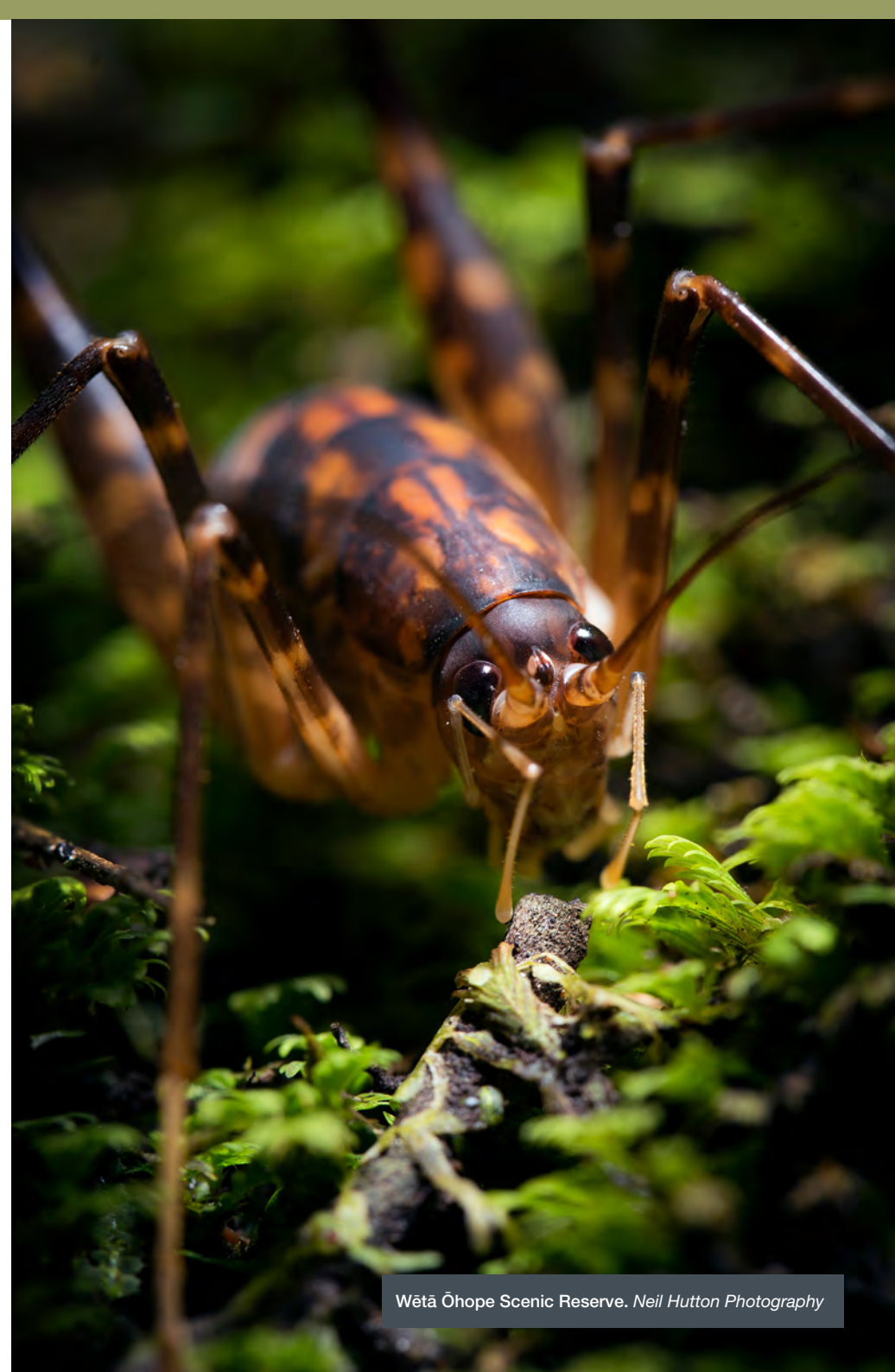
The Eastern Catchments Place is dominated by the forested Raukūmara Range, which extends into the East Coast Hawke's Bay CMS region. It is formed from old, strongly hardened sandstone and mudstone (greywacke), which accumulated in a deep marine environment and was subsequently uplifted. The Waioeka, Urutawa and Raukūmara areas are an integral part of a continuous tract of indigenous vegetation that extends from the East Cape south to the Wellington coast along the North Island's dividing range. These mountains contain a varied series of vegetation and habitat types, ranging from semi-coastal broadleaved ngahere through to alpine fellfield, herbfield and tussock lands. Particularly significant species that are found here include two genetically distinct subspecies of the at-risk pepeketua / Hochstetter's frog and the unique Raukumara tusked wētā (*Motuweta riparia*), as well as a variety of threatened birds, including the North Island brown kiwi, whio and karearea / New Zealand falcon.

The Raukumara Conservation Park is one of the least developed or visited expanses of bush in the North Island and contains the Raukumara Wilderness Area. Although the wilderness area is not closed to recreational visitors, it is managed specifically for its conservation values and therefore no recreational facilities are maintained within it.

Pest animals are having a fundamental impact on the ngahere of this Place, with deer, possums and goats presenting serious threats to ecosystem quality. The Raukūmara ngahere was once known for its relatively intact understorey, but this is now in critical decline.

The awa of this Place connect the maunga to the moana. Significant awa flow west into the Bay of Plenty, including the Waioeka and Mōtū rivers, which support many indigenous fish species. In addition, numerous awa have catchments that are almost entirely in primary vegetation, including the Hawaii, Haparapara, Waikakariki, Kereu and Raukokore rivers (see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place). Many of the awa have shingle beds and catchments that are characterised by steep slopes which, in combination with the underlying greywacke and high annual rainfall, make some areas prone to erosion.

Traditional routes, including those which pass through the nationally significant Mōtū River gorge, were traversed by tangata whenua and later by European settlers who followed awa into the East Coast Hawke's Bay region. The Tauranga Bridge in the Waioeka Gorge is a nationally significant suspension bridge, representing one of only two of its type remaining in New Zealand.



Local communities have strong traditional connections with this Place as an important source of kai and other resources located on their back doorsteps. Numerous recreation opportunities are available at accessible locations near the townships of Whakatāne and Ōpōtiki, as well as in more remote backcountry locations. Anglers, kayakers, trampers, hunters, walkers and cyclists appreciate the recreation opportunities in the area. There is a wide range of tracks, from gentle walks to backcountry experiences. For visitors wanting to experience true backcountry recreation opportunities, the Raukūmara Range offers remote bush areas that are popular with pig, deer and goat hunters.

## 7.2 Outcomes

### **This section describes the outcomes being sought for this Place – what it will be like in 10 years' time.**

The special connection that tangata whenua have with the land is recognised and upheld through their strong working relationships with the Department. The owners of land in Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata have a strong capability to manage their land for conservation purposes, and consequently these areas support a healthy and diverse range of flora and fauna, providing valuable ecological connections between other protected areas.

The local community connects and engages with the whenua and awa through opportunities to hunt, gather kai, and go camping and tramping. Interesting and enjoyable experiences are available that enhance understanding and respect for the ecological, cultural and historical importance of this Place. Areas around Mōtū–Ōpōtiki and Whakatāne are known for the opportunities available to outdoor recreationists in the ngahere, on the awa and towards the moana. Increasing numbers of visitors enjoy the spectacular and nationally recognised Mōtū cycle trails. The historic stories of the Waioeka Gorge and Tauranga Bridge are told and appreciated by visitors.

The Raukūmara Range is restored to a relatively untouched state, providing important habitats and ecosystems in near-pristine states, including the gazetted Raukumara Wilderness Area and the wild and scenic Mōtū River. The natural values of the Raukumara Wilderness Area are no longer declining, and the natural biodiversity is restored, healthy and functioning as a result of landscape-scale ecological restoration.

Pest animals and invasive pest plants are managed in partnership with the Bay of Plenty Regional Council, local landowners and the community. Deer, goats and possums have been reduced to low levels at high-value sites, to the extent that they have minimal impacts on ecosystems and the understorey of the ngahere is thriving. Native species dominate due to the significant reduction in pest plants that present the greatest threat to the ecosystem, such as wilding conifers, climbing spindle berry and old man's beard.

The ngahere of this Place provide diverse habitats and ecosystems and support thriving populations of flora and fauna, such as the pepeketua / Hochstetter's frog, Raukumara tusked wētā and perennial herb *Myosotis pottsiana*. A continuous ecological corridor runs from the southern to the northern tip of this Place, and nationally significant ecosystem types and threatened species populations are secure and their conditions have improved.

This Place retains its success as the mainland stronghold for North Island weka (*Gallirallus australis greyi*). The continuation of protective programmes has seen the populations of weka increase to the point where they are naturally expanding into surrounding Places.

The New Zealand public has come to know and appreciate how special this Place is due to its combination of remote, near-pristine settings, prominent landscape and geological features, including large ngahere, maunga and deeply incised gorges, and range of accessible locations where visitors can enjoy these features and the history of the area. Aircraft are rarely encountered by visitors to the Raukumara Wilderness Area and occasionally encountered by visitors to the Waioeka Conservation Area, Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve, Urutawa Conservation Area and Raukumara Conservation Park.

## 7.3 Values, issues and opportunities, and policies

7.3.1	Treaty of Waitangi relationships
Treaty settlement information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition set out agreements between the Minister of Conservation and claimant groups in recognition of their special associations with sites and specify the nature of their input into the management of those sites.</li> <li>• <b>Whakatōhea Agreement in Principle (AIP):</b> Whakatōhea and the Crown signed an AIP in August 2017. This AIP shows a proposed redress for inclusion in the Deed of Settlement, though this may change as a result of further negotiations with the Crown. It includes an offer to co-author a chapter in the Bay of Plenty CMS, which will cover public conservation lands and waters in the Eastern Catchments Place, including the Waioeka Conservation Area, Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve, Urutawa Conservation Area, and other smaller adjoining public conservation lands and waters. The boundary for the chapter will be finalised in the Deed of Settlement. The inclusion of this redress is conditional on the Crown being satisfied that overlapping interests have been addressed, particularly agreement on how to ensure that neighbouring tangata whenua are considered by Whakatōhea during the co-authoring process. The Deed of Settlement will include a commitment by the Crown to commence the development of the Whakatōhea chapter within 3 years of the settlement date. This is likely to result in a partial review of this CMS.</li> <li>• <b>Te Whānau a Apanui AIP:</b> Te Whānau a Apanui and the Crown signed an AIP in June 2019. This AIP shows a proposed redress for inclusion in the Deed of Settlement, which is the next step between iwi and the Crown before legislation is finally drafted. The recent AIP with Te Whānau a Apanui gives them the ability to co-author, alongside Ngāti Porou and in consultation with the East Coast Hawke’s Bay Conservation Board, a single Raukūmara chapter for inclusion in the East Coast Hawke’s Bay CMS. This will lead to eventual changes in the boundary of this CMS, which will be addressed at the time of settlement. This new Raukūmara chapter responds to iwi aspirations for a mana-to-mana relationship and a more integrated management approach for the Raukūmara Conservation Park. It also reinforces the wider efforts of iwi, the Department and Ngā Whenua Rāhui to work collaboratively to improve the environmental health of the Park and adjoining lands. Other matters relating to conservation that are outlined in the AIP include a Relationship Agreement between the Department and iwi, the possible transfer of eight coastal sites as reserves, and the development of a cultural materials plan</li> </ul>
Tangata whenua within this Place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tangata whenua with Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within this Place and whose rohe extend into this Place include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāti Porou through the Ngati Porou Claims Settlement Act 2012, which sets up a strategic partnership arrangement where the Crown and Ngāti Porou jointly develop a separate section of the East Coast Hawke’s Bay CMS known as Ngā Whakahaere Takirua. The Raukūmara Range is an important part of the Ngāti Porou rohe, so consistency between outcomes sought for the Raukūmara Range in this CMS and in Ngā Whakahaere Takirua is essential.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Other tangata whenua with ancestral lands in this Place but who are at various stages of the Treaty settlement process include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Te Whanau ā Apanui;</li> <li>- Ngai Tai;</li> <li>- Whakatōhea; and</li> <li>- Upokorehe.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Values	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This Place celebrates the rich history of tangata whenua who have occupied and continue to maintain mana whenua on all flanks of the pae maunga and along many of the waterways.</li> <li>• Rich mahinga kai areas, major thoroughfares for missions of peace and war, and associated historic activities are captured in the names of key geographical features of the region.</li> <li>• A significant proportion of the land in this Place (around 51 000 ha or 15% of the total land area) is protected under Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata, which is the highest proportion of any Place in the region.</li> </ul>



7.3.2	Natural values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Priority management unit:</b> Puketoetoe-Mōtū is a priority management unit in the Eastern Catchments Place that is known for its conifer–broadleaved ngahere (see Appendix 5).</li> <li>• <b>Podocarp–broadleaved ngahere:</b> The ngahere in this Place include a wide range of podocarp–broadleaved species, such as rimu, northern rātā, tawa, hīnau (<i>Elaeocarpus dentatus</i>), rewarewa (<i>Knightsia excelsa</i>), kāmahi (<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>), kahikatea, miro, beech and tōtara (see Appendix 3).</li> <li>• <b>Contiguous ecological corridor:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Raukumara Conservation Park, Urutawa Conservation Area, Waioeka Scenic Reserve and Waioeka Conservation Park link south to Te Urewera and the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park and then extend further south, forming an important ecological corridor and part of a contiguous tract of indigenous vegetation from the East Cape to Wellington.</li> <li>- The summit of the Waioeka ranges represents the northernmost extent of alpine vegetation in New Zealand. The alpine plants found here include large buttercups (<i>Ranunculus</i> spp.), prickly wild spaniards (<i>Aciphylla</i> spp.) and other alpine shrubs and delicate herbs.</li> <li>- The Manganuku and Pakihi stream valley areas in the Urutawa Conservation Area and Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve are the Department’s management sites for the threatened plant Potts’ forget-me-not (<i>Myosotis pottsiana</i>).</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Raukumara Conservation Park:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Raukumara Conservation Park and surrounding public conservation lands and waters along the Raukūmara Range have been assessed as some of the region’s highest priority biodiversity areas due to the diverse range of ecosystems over a variety of altitudes from the coast to the maunga leading to a variety of ecological niches.</li> <li>- This Park is home to species such as the threatened pekapeka / long-tailed bat and whio, two genetically distinct subspecies of the at-risk pepeketua / Hochstetter’s frog, the unique Raukumara tusked wētā, and the Hikurangi and paua slugs (<i>Schizoglossa gigantea</i>).</li> <li>- The Raukūmara Range was one of the last areas to be colonised by deer and possums, and the early commencement of control operations means that the palatable shrub tier remains here, unlike in much of the rest of the country.</li> <li>- The Mangatuhara Stream valley has the largest population of intact northern rātā within the Raukūmara basin.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve is New Zealand’s longest scenic reserve, covering 19 500 ha of the Waioeka River catchment, and is an area of outstanding natural value.</li> <li>- This reserve is also home to species such as the threatened pekapeka / long-tailed bat and whio and the at-risk pepeketua / Hochstetter’s frog.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Urutawa Conservation Area:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Urutawa Conservation Area is predominantly semi-coastal and contains both lowland rimu and tawa ngahere and upland beech ngahere.</li> <li>- This area is home to a variety of threatened birds, such as whio, North Island weka, karearea / New Zealand falcon and North Island brown kiwi, as well as the at-risk pepeketua / Hochstetter’s frog, the paua slug, and two threatened and at-risk plants – Potts’ forget-me-not and parsley fern (<i>Botrychium australe</i>).</li> <li>- The Toatoa Scenic Reserve, Conservation Area and Pakihi Stream Conservation Area in the Urutawa Conservation Area and Meremere Hill Scenic Reserve are important management sites for the only natural mainland population of North Island weka.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Mōtū River:</b> The Mōtū River is a significant geological feature (refer to section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place and Appendix 9). It is one of five awa in the North Island classified as ‘wild and scenic’ and is subject to the National Water Conservation (Motu River) Order 1984, preserving its outstanding natural values for all freshwater fishes, wildlife, and outdoor recreation and enjoyment for current and future generations.</li> <li>• <b>QEII covenants:</b> There are many QEII covenants and large tracts of land registered as Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata within the Eastern Catchments Place. These play an important role in connecting ecosystems both on and off public conservation lands and waters</li> </ul>

<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> The large size, remote nature and extremely limited access of the tracts of ngahere in this Place, particularly in the Raukūmara Range, present financial, logistical and social challenges to managing key ecological threats. Pest animals, such as possums, rats, mustelids (<i>Mustelidae</i>), deer and goats, all bring different management challenges, particularly at a large scale. Furthermore, a range of other threats, such as pest plants, new invasive organisms and fire, require significant, dedicated resources, as insufficient resources put pressure on the Department's ability to address these threats at a large scale. Possums represent one of the greatest threats to ngahere health due to the impacts of their browsing on the canopy, so finding solutions for reducing possum numbers in this difficult terrain is a high priority. Deer also have impacts on ngahere health, despite their relatively late arrival in the Raukūmara Range, so their management is also a priority in high-value ecological areas. Reliance on recreational hunting or commercial recovery to manage possum and deer numbers is unlikely to be sufficient to achieve conservation gains.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> To achieve ecological gains, deer, possums and mustelids need to be controlled to consistently low numbers over large areas – i.e. landscape-scale control is required. A successful landscape-scale programme to manage goats across the Place has been underway since 2005, which is being led by the Bay of Plenty Regional Council and includes the Department/Ngā Whenua Rāhui, Ōpōtiki District Council and Gisborne District Council as partners. Maintaining and increasing the gains made in this programme is critical to increasing the natural values of this Place, and the model used here can serve as a platform for other ecological management (e.g. deer control).</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> Although there is a continuous corridor of protected areas linking the Raukūmara Range to Te Urewera and further south, not all of these areas are of sufficient quality to provide habitat for indigenous species.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> Improvement of the condition of protected areas and the successful management of complementary areas of private land for conservation purposes would improve the ability of indigenous species to travel through these corridors and have access to large and diverse habitats. Management of the Waioeka Conservation Area, Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve, Urutawa Conservation Area, Toatoa Scenic Reserve, Raukumara Conservation Area and other smaller surrounding conservation areas could be undertaken, with a strong focus on improving the condition of the protected areas to create a contiguous tract of habitat for indigenous species. Areas of private land could act as 'ecological stepping-stones' to help species move between larger protected areas.</p> <p>c) <b>Issue:</b> The at-risk pepeketua / Hochstetter's frog and the unique Raukumara tusked wētā are threatened by habitat reduction and pest animals.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> Further work is needed to preserve habitat and manage pest animals to increase the populations of the pepeketua / Hochstetter's frog and Raukumara tusked wētā.</p> <p>d) <b>Issue:</b> Substantial areas between the Raukumara Conservation Park and the coast that contain important ecosystem values, such as threatened coastal, semi-coastal and lowland ecosystem types, are in private ownership.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> Although a large part of this Place is formally protected, particularly through Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata and QEII covenants, its management would benefit from an increased capability of landowners to manage land for conservation outcomes and the legal protection of areas that are not protected.</p> <p>e) <b>Opportunity:</b> The Ōpōtiki–Mōtū area is home to the only naturally occurring population of North Island weka and is the stronghold for this subspecies. The Department works in this area to preserve North Island weka, and there is an opportunity to reduce threats by increasing the management of pest animals, raising awareness and advocacy to increase the understanding and response to threats from disease, and reducing the unauthorised taking of birds.</p>
--	--

<b>Policies</b>	7.3.2.1	Reduce the deer population in the Raukumara Conservation Park through collaboration with tangata whenua, the Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Ngā Whenua Rāhui, feral venison operators and adjacent landowners.
	7.3.2.2	Continue to undertake goat control in collaboration with the Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Ōpōtiki District Council, Gisborne District Council and Ngā Whenua Rāhui.
	7.3.2.3	Work with private landowners to increase the number of privately owned areas that are actively managed for positive conservation outcomes, with a focus on improving the health of the ecosystems to form a continuous corridor from Te Urewera to the Raukumara Conservation Park.
	7.3.2.4	Support landscape-scale pest control in the ecological corridor of the Raukumara Conservation Park, Urutawa Conservation Area, Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve and Waioeka Conservation Area in collaboration with tangata whenua, regional councils and territorial authorities, and conservation stakeholders.
	7.3.2.5	Investigate opportunities to more closely manage the Waioeka Conservation Area, Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve, Urutawa Conservation Area, Totatōa Scenic Reserve, Raukumara Conservation Park and surrounding conservation areas as a continuous tract of conservation land to provide better habitat for indigenous species and allow populations to thrive.
	7.3.2.6	Work with Ngā Whenua Rāhui, regional councils and the owners of land in Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata to develop landowner capability to manage their land for conservation purposes.

<b>7.3.3 Historic values</b>	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Early settlement:</b> The Eastern Catchments Place holds significant historic values. Archaeological evidence suggests that settlement by tangata whenua occurred along the coast and the major awa systems. There are many recorded pā, pit and terrace sites, including evidence of historical kai cultivation on awa terraces and at numerous pā sites.</li> <li>• <b>Traditional routes:</b> This Place contains many routes that were used traditionally as thoroughfares between the eastern coast and the Ōpōtiki and Whakatāne area. Some of these routes can still be enjoyed by visitors, including the historic Pakihi route, which is now a well-known cycling track.</li> <li>• <b>Waioeka Journey:</b> The Waioeka Journey – Te Awa a Tamatea on State Highway 35 is made up of seven rest areas established at sites through the Waioeka Gorge. These sites form a valuable resource for people travelling through the gorge, as they tell the historic stories of the farming and road and bridge building that occurred in the area through a series of interpretive panels. There are pou at the gateways to the gorge, signalling the long occupation of the area by tangata whenua.</li> <li>• <b>Tauranga Bridge:</b> The historic Tauranga Bridge in the Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve is one of only two surviving harp suspension bridges left in New Zealand, and is of national significance for its engineering design and appearance. Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga has registered the bridge as a Category 1 historic place.</li> <li>• <b>Manganuku Bridge:</b> The Manganuku Bridge is also found in the Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve and is a representative and rare survivor of a typical New Zealand wood truss road bridge.</li> <li>• <b>Matekerepu Historic Reserve:</b> The Matekerepu Historic Reserve near Kutarere contains a pā that is an outstanding representative example of Māori resource use and settlement.</li> </ul>



<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> The history and stories of this Place are not widely known or understood.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to further assess and verify knowledge of the historic and cultural heritage on public conservation lands and waters in this Place and to tell the historic stories to the wider community and visitors.</p> <p>b) <b>Opportunity:</b> Further maintenance or upgrading work and additional interpretation at the Tauranga Bridge would raise awareness of the site's historical significance.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>7.3.3.1 Improve public awareness through further development of the historic values and scenic concepts of the Waioeka Gorge.</p> <p>7.3.3.2 Undertake maintenance and upgrade work at the Tauranga Bridge, and install additional interpretation to highlight the historical significance of this site.</p>

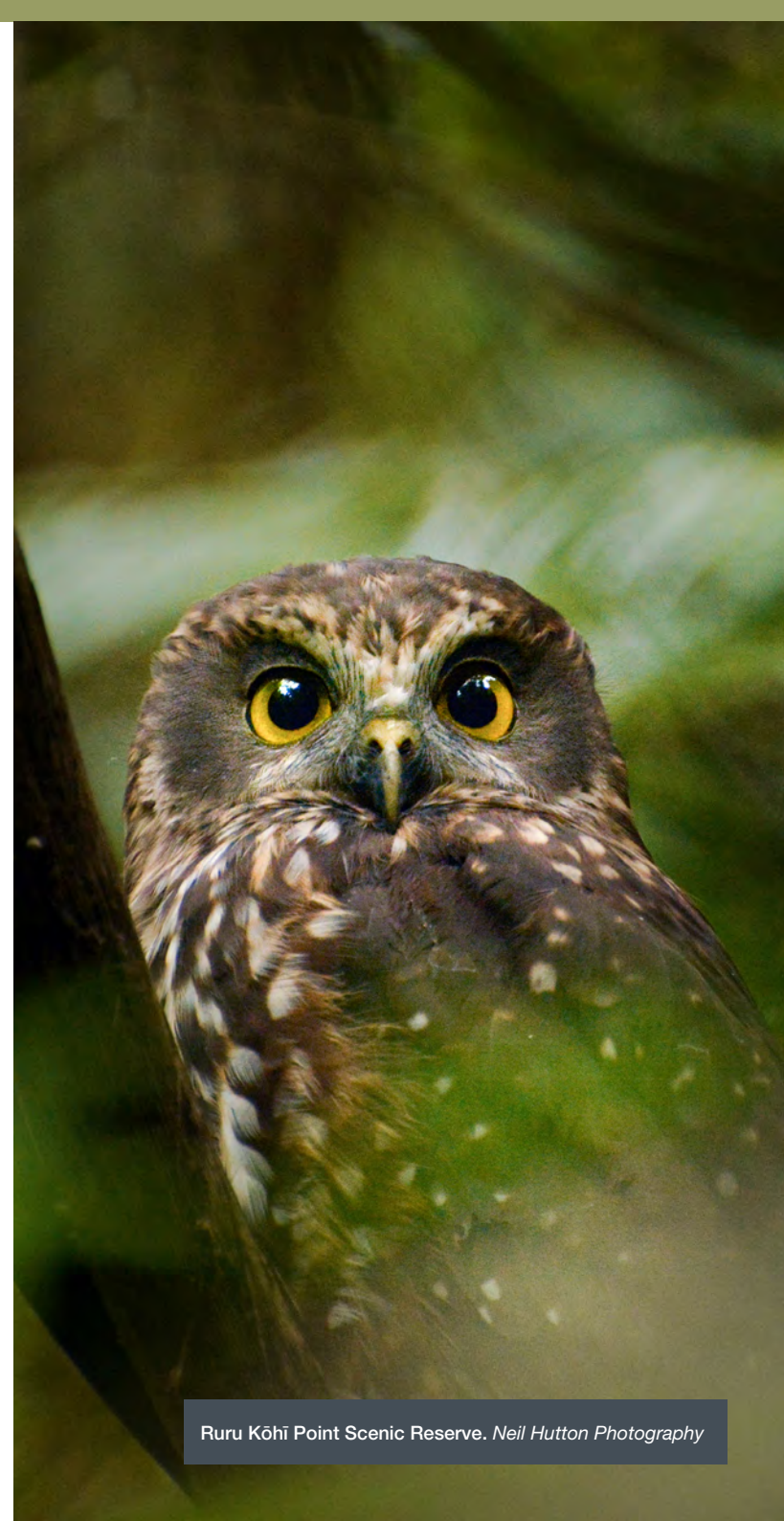


7.3.4	Recreation values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Wilderness experience:</b> The Raukumara Wilderness Area provides a rare opportunity for a remote wilderness experience. There is an unmarked historic route (the East–West Traverse), but this is not maintained, in keeping with the requirements of the Conservation Act 1987. In addition, no recreational facilities are maintained within this area.</li> <li>• <b>Hunting:</b> Hunting is a valued activity in the Eastern Catchments Place, not only for recreation but also to provide kai for families within the community and as a customary practice for tangata whenua.</li> <li>• <b>Great Ride:</b> The Motu Trails is one of only 23 nationally recognised Great Rides and forms part of several popular mountain biking opportunities. The historic Pakihi stock route and Old Motu Coach Road form two legs of the Motu Trails and pass through the Urutawa Conservation Area, providing a recreational link between the Ōpōtiki and Gisborne communities.</li> <li>• <b>Waioeka Gorge:</b> The Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve and Waioeka Conservation Area contain an easily accessible, well-used network of huts and tracks for white-water kayaking, rafting, short walks, longer treks and mountain biking.</li> <li>• <b>Waiotaha area:</b> The Waiotaha area is valued by the local community for the variety of accessible day and backcountry experiences that are within easy reach of the Whakatāne and Ōpōtiki townships.</li> <li>• <b>Water recreation:</b> A wide variety of water sports occur on the Mōtū River, such as jet boating, white-water rafting and kayaking. There are also white-water rafting and kayaking opportunities on the Waioeka River, while closer to the coast, the awa flattens out and offers opportunities for waka ama, stand-up paddle boarding and kayaking.</li> <li>• <b>Backcountry locations:</b> This Place is highly valued for its backcountry locations, providing opportunities for deer, goat and pig hunting, which are popular pursuits in this area.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) <b>Opportunity:</b> The community within this Place is looking to develop eco-recreation / adventure tourism opportunities, including potential new recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters.</li> <li>b) <b>Issue:</b> The wide variety of water sports and easy access to the Mōtū River could provide opportunities for the spread of pest species such as didymo. Unauthorised camping also occurs. <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to increase awareness of the Mōtū River’s significant value and the need for conservation.</li> <li>c) <b>Issue:</b> As part of the Motu Trails, the Pakihi Track and Tirohanga Dunes Trail are managed by the Department. However, the ‘Great Rides’ standard requires maintenance to a higher track standard than the Department has funding for. <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department should partner with others to sustainably maintain the Motu Trails tracks to the required ‘Great Rides’ standard.</li> </ul>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>7.3.4.1 Support others to develop recreation opportunities in the Waioeka/Urutawa area where these do not negatively impact on ecological outcomes and are operationally sustainable for the Department.</p> <p>7.3.4.2 Work in partnership with others to raise awareness of threats to the Mōtū River’s fragile natural and historic values and to manage these threats for the protection of these values (refer to section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place).</p> <p>7.3.4.3 Continue to maintain and upgrade the historic, recreational and interpretation facilities and opportunities through the Waioeka Gorge.</p> <p>7.3.4.4 Continue to partner with the New Zealand Cycle Trail (Ngā Haerenga) and Motu Trails Charitable Trust to ensure the Motu Trails are maintained to the ‘Great Rides’ standard in a way that is operationally sustainable for the Department.</p> <p>7.3.4.5 Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Waioeka Conservation Area, Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve, Urutawa Conservation Area and Raukumara Conservation Park, in accordance with Policy 10.2.3 in Part Three.</p>



## Milestones for the Eastern Catchments Place

Natural values	Historic values	Recreation values
<p><b>Landscape-scale ecological restoration</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Extended areas that are subject to landscape-scale pest-control (year 1).</li> <li>2. Maintained or increased areas that are subject to landscape-scale pest-control (years 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Deer and goat control</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Maintained deer and goat control at high-value sites at 2020 levels (year 1).</li> <li>4. Expanded deer and goat control at these sites (year 4).</li> </ol> <p><b>North Island weka</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Undertaken a weka education campaign with local communities (year 4).</li> </ol>	<p><b>Actively conserved sites</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Upgraded and provided additional interpretation for the Tauranga Bridge in the Waioeka Gorge (year 4).</li> </ol>	<p>See section 3.5: Regional milestones in Part One.</p>







Gulls on Bryan's Beach, Ōpōtiki. Neil Hutton Photography

## 8. Coastal and Marine Place

### Mai i Ngā-kurī-a-Whārei ki Tihirau.

#### From the dogs of Whārei to Tihirau.

This refers to the supernatural dogs that came with the Mātaatua waka and the traditional boundary of the people of this waka, which encapsulates the coast from the west to the east of this Place. Ngā-kurī-a-Whārei marks the western boundary and, although its exact location is unknown, is identified as being somewhere between Waihi Beach and Bowentown, possibly at a stream known as Waiorooro or at the location of two small mounds near Emerton Road in Athenree. Tihirau is Cape Runaway.

### 8.1 Overview

The Coastal and Marine Place includes terrestrial and marine environments out to 12 nautical miles offshore; a long coastline that includes the region's largest urban areas, such as Tauranga, Mount Maunganui and Whakatāne; coastal ngahere and mangroves; sheltered harbours and offshore islands; rocky reefs and a soft-sediment sea floor; and two marine reserves – Te Paepae Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) and Tuhua (Mayor Island). Understanding and expanding protection of these areas for future generations is critical, as they lie at the heart of the region's identity as places to work, play, gather kai and relax.

The Bay of Plenty has been and continues to be subjected to a range of human activities and climate change, which affect marine biodiversity and associated ecosystem services. Pressures such as commercial and recreational fishing, pollution, coastal reclamation, land use and nutrient input all negatively impact coastal habitats, and can also interact with each other and have cumulative effects. Research indicates that New Zealand's marine species and habitats are under threat. Our activities on land and at sea are polluting the marine environment, and climate change is impacting on marine ecosystems, taonga species and people.

Coastal and marine areas are managed by multiple agencies, including the Department, regional councils and territorial authorities, the Ministry for Primary Industries, Maritime New Zealand, and the Ministry of Transport. The Department is responsible for:

- marine reserves;
- marine mammals, such as dolphins, whales, rāpoka / New Zealand sea lion (*Phocarctos hookeri*) and kekeno / New Zealand fur seal (*Arctocephalus forsteri*);
- managing marine protected species;
- administering the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement,<sup>6</sup> which promotes sustainable management from the high-tide mark to the 12 nautical mile limit; and
- managing areas such as dunes and islands.

This Place holds special significance for tangata whenua and the local community, who are involved in many committed coastal, estuary and harbour care groups working on habitat protection and improvement initiatives. The Bay of Plenty was the landing site of several waka that brought Māori to New Zealand, including the Horouta, Mātaatua, Nukutere, Tākitimu, Te Arawa and Tainui waka. Many tangata whenua settlements occurred, as evidenced by the large number of archaeological sites, wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga / special places and traditional sources of kaimoana/seafood found along the coast and on offshore islands within the harbours.

**Te Tāpui Tokotoru Conservation Management Plan<sup>7</sup>** covers three sites in this Place: the Moutohorā (Whale Island) Wildlife Management Reserve, Ohope Scenic Reserve and Tauwhare Pa Scenic Reserve. These sites are jointly managed by the Department and Ngāti Awa through the Joint Management Committee Te Tapatoru ā Toi.

**Marine reserves** currently protect less than 0.5% of marine areas in the Bay of Plenty. Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) are offshore island marine reserves that protect intertidal and subtidal rocky reef marine assemblages and adjacent soft-sediment habitats. The protected islands are of cultural significance to tangata whenua as the departing place of spirits on their final journey back to the spiritual homeland of Hawaiki. Under the Convention on Biological Diversity<sup>8</sup> and the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals,<sup>9</sup> New Zealand is committed to the global goal of establishing a representative network of protected

areas and other effective area-based conservation measures comprising 10% of coastal and marine areas by 2020. New post-2020 international biodiversity targets are currently being negotiated.

**The open coastline** is predominantly sandy from Waihi Beach in the west to east of Ōpōtiki at Opape, but mainly rocky from Opape to Cape Runaway. Sizeable harbours are located at Tauranga and Ōhiwa. Standing at the entrance to Tauranga Harbour is Mount Maunganui (Mauao), forming a significant landmark that is sacred for tangata whenua and highly valued by the local community.

**Below the ocean surface**, the region has many types of marine habitats. Examples include rocky reefs, which provide habitat for a range of species, such as tāmure/ snapper (*Pagrus auratus*), numerous invertebrates and seaweeds; and soft-sediment habitats such as estuaries, which support a diverse array of organisms, including sponges and urchins, and play a pivotal role in marine ecosystems.

**Offshore and within-harbour islands**, which include Motuotau Island, Karewa Island, and Uretara, Motuotu, Whangakopikopiko and Pataua islands in Ōhiwa Harbour, are public conservation lands and waters. Tangata whenua have a special relationship with these islands, which they value for many purposes, including growing and gathering resources (see Appendix 4).

**Diverse coastal habitats** along the coastline of the Bay of Plenty include beaches, coastal cliffs, dunes and sandspits. On the mainland, coastal cliffs and hill slopes along the coastline on public conservation lands and waters are characterised by pōhutukawa-dominated ngahere with areas of secondary shrubland and ngahere that reflect past disturbances.

**Estuarine wetlands and lagoons** are a feature of this Place, providing wildlife habitat for native birds and several threatened and at-risk species, such as moho pererū / banded rail (*Gallirallus philippensis*) and tūturiwhatu / New Zealand dotterel (*Charadrius obscurus*).

**Recreation** in this Place is nationally renowned for opportunities enabled by the long sandy beaches and sheltered bays. Activities include coastal walks, which offer access along the coast and to each bay, cycling routes and camping. At sea, activities such as fishing, surfing, diving, snorkelling and kayaking are popular.

<sup>6</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/about-us/science-publications/conservation-publications/marine-and-coastal/new-zealand-coastal-policy-statement/](http://www.doc.govt.nz/about-us/science-publications/conservation-publications/marine-and-coastal/new-zealand-coastal-policy-statement/)

<sup>7</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf)

<sup>8</sup> [www.cbd.int/convention/](http://www.cbd.int/convention/)

<sup>9</sup> <https://sdgs.un.org/goals>





Kōhī Point and Te Moana Nui a Toi. Neil Hutton Photography

## 8.2 Outcomes

### This section describes the outcomes being sought for this Place – what it will be like in 10 years' time.

Coastal and marine areas are treasured by the local community, and the Department shows leadership through strong advocacy and partnerships with other organisations for coastal and marine planning. Understanding of the extent and condition of coastal ecosystems is improved, and progress has been made towards restoring the mauri and ecological health of the moana. Where relevant, sites with high conservation value have been reclassified to a higher status.

The ecosystems and habitats of the Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) marine reserves sustain diverse populations of indigenous marine flora and fauna. An expanded network of marine protected areas that are representative of a range of coastal and marine habitats are in place, including as a result of community-led processes supported by the Department. These marine protected areas act as ecological stepping stones for the dispersal and migration of marine species, increasing the ecological integrity of the bioregion.

The Department supports the special relationship of tangata whenua with coastal and marine areas, including offshore islands, and tangata whenua are actively involved in managing and protecting coastal and marine ecosystems.

Tangata whenua and local communities drive innovation and are conservation leaders in this Place. Collaborative work, which includes education and active participation, results in healthy estuarine, beach and dune ecosystems and thriving populations of native species. Onshore sand dunes are respected and protected.

People can safely observe marine mammals such as kekeno / New Zealand fur seals, Bryde's whales (*Balaenoptera edeni brydei*) and bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*), as well as seabirds such as ōi / grey-faced petrels (*Pterodroma macroptera*) and kororā / little blue penguins (*Eudyptula minor*) at various locations along the coast, on islands and at sea. Increased public awareness ensures that wildlife remain safe and undisturbed.



The special connection of tangata whenua with Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) marine reserves is recognised, and knowledge of the natural values of these marine reserves is enhanced through collaborative research and monitoring. Visitors and users of the marine reserves can observe intact marine ecosystems and understand and value their role in the overall protection of the marine environment.

The natural, historic and cultural heritage of offshore and within-harbour islands is protected and enhanced. The public have opportunities to enjoy these islands, contributing to their understanding of the history of this Place. Visitors to Department-managed offshore islands rarely encounter aircraft.

The increasing number of animal-pest-free islands are a haven for species that are threatened on the mainland and remain free of introduced mammals. These islands also have few pest plants, healthy indigenous ngahere and thriving populations of indigenous birdlife such as the tūturiwhatu / New Zealand dotterel. The importance of maintaining biosecurity is understood and visitor numbers are sustainable.

Whitebait species are thriving through the Department's active enhancement of habitats within public conservation lands and waters and advocacy to other agencies.

Visitors appreciate the coastal and marine ecosystems and species, treating wildlife, vulnerable ecosystems and historic sites with care and respect. The increasing demand for recreational camping is met, and the Department partners with others to expand recreation opportunities that are consistent with conservation outcomes and operational sustainability.



DOC rangers train for whale stranding Ōpōtiki. *Neil Hutton Photography*



Dotterel Ōhope Spit. *Neil Hutton Photography*

## 8.3 Policies

8.3.1	Te Tāpui Tokotoru
<b>Context</b>	<p>The Moutohorā (Whale Island) Wildlife Management Reserve, Ohope Scenic Reserve and Tauwhare Pa Scenic Reserve are collectively known as Te Tāpui Tokotoru and have their own conservation management plan.<sup>10</sup> These reserves are jointly managed by the Department and Ngāti Awa through the Joint Management Committee Te Tapatoru ā Toi, and the conservation management plan contains outcomes and other specific provisions for the reserves as required by the Conservation Act 1987 and Conservation General Policy 2005.<sup>11</sup></p> <p>This CMS contains the overarching vision for the region and outcomes for the Coastal and Marine Place, which include Te Tāpui Tokotoru. However, it does not repeat the information provided in the conservation management plan.</p>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p><b>a) Issue:</b> The management of Te Tāpui Tokotoru must be consistent with the relevant legislation, the Conservation General Policy 2005 and this CMS. Outcomes sought for Te Tāpui Tokotoru need to be integrated with the outcomes sought for surrounding areas and the wider region to ensure integrated management.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to establish a clear relationship between this CMS and the Te Tāpui Tokotoru Conservation Management Plan for management of the three reserves and integration with the surrounding areas and the wider region.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>8.3.1.1 Manage the Moutohorā (Whale Island) Wildlife Management Reserve, Ohope Scenic Reserve and Tauwhare Pa Scenic Reserve in accordance with their conservation management plan (including the visitor management, aircraft and vehicles policies).</p> <p>8.3.1.2 Integrate the management of Te Tāpui Tokotoru with surrounding areas in the Coastal and Marine Place.</p>
8.3.2	Treaty of Waitangi partnerships
<b>Treaty settlement information</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition set out agreements between the Minister of Conservation and claimant groups in recognition of their special associations with identified sites and specify the nature of their input into the management of those sites.</li> <li>• Tuhua (Mayor Island) Wildlife Refuge is owned by Te Whānau a Tauwhao ki Tūhua and administered by the Tūhua Trust Board. A formal agreement between the Department and the Trust Board seeks collaborative ecological restoration of the island.</li> </ul>

<sup>10</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/conservation/land-and-freshwater/land/jmc/ttt--management-plan-final.pdf)

<sup>11</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf)

<p><b>Tangata whenua within this Place</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tangata whenua with Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within the Coastal and Marine Place include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāti Awa through the Ngāti Awa Claim Settlement Act 2005, which provides for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a Deed of Recognition over Uretara Island;</li> <li>• a Joint Management Committee (Te Tapatoru ā Toi) for the Moutohorā (Whale Island) Wildlife Management Reserve, Ohope Scenic Reserve and Tauwhare Pa Scenic Reserve; and</li> <li>• a joint advisory committee for the Matata Scenic Reserve, Whakapaukorero Historic Reserve and Te Awa a Te Atua;</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Tapuika through the Tapuika Claims Settlement Act 2014, which provides for a Deed of Recognition over the Maketu Conservation Area; and</li> <li>- Ngāti Tūwharetoa through the Ngāti Tuwharetoa (Bay of Plenty) Settlement Act 2005, which provides for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a joint advisory committee for the Matata Scenic Reserve, Whakapaukorero Historic Reserve and Te Awa a Te Atua; and</li> <li>• an area of up to 1 ha in the Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve to provide access to traditional sources of kai for up to 210 days per year.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• Tangata whenua with no Treaty settlement requirements for public conservation lands and waters within this Place but whose rohe extend into this Place include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū (settled under the Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claims Settlement Act 2008);</li> <li>- Waitaha;</li> <li>- Ngāti Rangiwewhi; and</li> <li>- Ngāti Mākino.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Other tangata whenua with ancestral lands in this Place who are at various stages of the Treaty settlement process are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ngāti Ranginui;</li> <li>- Ngāi Te Rangi;</li> <li>- Ngā Pōtiki;</li> <li>- Ngāti Pūkenga;</li> <li>- Te Whānau-ā-Apanui;</li> <li>- Ngāi Tai;</li> <li>- Whakatōhea;</li> <li>- Upokorehe;</li> <li>- Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapū (see Part One);</li> <li>- Hauraki-affiliated iwi and hapū (see Part One); and</li> <li>- Tauranga Moana Iwi Collective (see Part One).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p><b>Values</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Many ancient pā sites, battlegrounds, kūmara gardens and pits, urupā / burial grounds, and midden sites are clearly visible along the coast. These sites represent the cultural heritage of tangata whenua and are a reminder of their whakapapa, spiritual and historic values, customary practices, and tikanga.</li> <li>• Tangata whenua have a special relationship with the islands, which they are connected to for many reasons, including growing and gathering resources. The remains of significant pā, garden, urupā and battle sites can be found on Mayor Island (Tuhua).</li> <li>• Tauranga Harbour (Tauranga Moana) was as significant (if not more significant) as the land to tangata whenua. It was the source of kaimoana and a means of access and communication amongst tangata whenua.</li> <li>• Karewa Island was traditionally a harvest site for kuia / northern muttonbird (<i>Procellaria cinerea</i>) and kaimoana.</li> <li>• Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) Marine Reserve (Paepae te Hawaiki) holds significant cultural and historic values and is wāhi tapu.</li> <li>• Tuhua (Mayor Island) Marine Reserve has cultural importance as the source of once abundant kaimoana resources, as well as an important source of obsidian for stone tools, and as such was an important strategic location for tangata whenua.</li> <li>• The Maketu Estuary is of immense cultural and historical importance to tangata whenua, as it was the final landing place of the Arawa waka.</li> </ul>



8.3.3	Natural values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Priority management units:</b> Tuhua (Mayor Island) Marine Reserve, Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) Marine Reserve (Paepae te Hawaiki), Moutohora Island and Karewa Island are priority management units within the Coastal and Marine Place (see Appendix 5).</li> <li>• <b>Highly engaged local community:</b> The Department is supported in its work by a highly engaged and active local community. This work is often undertaken by organised community groups in collaboration with the Bay of Plenty Regional Council.</li> <li>• <b>Marine habitats and ecosystems:</b> The marine habitats and ecosystems in this Place are diverse, including saltmarshes, estuarine mudflats, mangroves, sandy beaches, rocky and soft-sediment coastlines, subtidal rocky reefs, subtidal sediment flats, hydrothermal vents, and biogenic reefs (see Appendix 8).</li> <li>• <b>Marine reserves:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Tuhua (Mayor Island) Marine Reserve has extensive shallow rocky reefs that are dominated by productive kelp (<i>Ecklonia</i> spp.) forests.</li> <li>- Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) Marine Reserve (Paepae te Hawaiki) has steep-sided rock pinnacles rising from the upper continental slope and provides habitat for populations of deep-water species such as bass, makataharaki/gemfish (<i>Rexea solandri</i>) and rubyfish (<i>Plagiogeneion rubiginosum</i>). New Zealand's largest known aggregation of small-tooth sand tiger sharks (<i>Odontaspis ferox</i>) has also been observed near this reserve.</li> <li>- Both reserves are strongly influenced by the warm waters of the East Auckland Current and are visited by large pelagic (open sea) fishes, such as marlin (<i>Istiophoridae</i>), and sharks during summer.</li> <li>- Monitoring has shown increased numbers of key predatory fish species at Tuhua (Mayor Island) Marine Reserve, including an increase in tāmure/snapper abundance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Marine species:</b> The diverse marine habitats and ecosystems in this Place support a range of marine species. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- rocky reefs support species such as tāmure/snapper, kōura / rock lobster (<i>Jasus edwardsii</i>) and pāua (<i>Haliotis iris</i>), as well as numerous other invertebrate species and seaweeds;</li> <li>- soft-sediment habitats, including estuaries, support a diverse array of organisms, such as pūwhaiu / red gurnard (<i>Chelidonichthys kumu</i>), sponges, tunicates, bivalves, crustaceans, worms and urchins, and play a pivotal role in marine ecosystems; and</li> <li>- pelagic fishes such as kahawai (<i>Arripis trutta</i>) and warehenga/kingfish (<i>Seriola lalandi</i>) are highly mobile and move throughout the region and beyond.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Threatened and at-risk species:</b> Several threatened and at-risk species are present in this Place, including tohorā / Bryde's whale, matuku moana / reef heron (<i>Egretta sacra</i>), matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern (<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>) and tarāpuka / black-billed gull (<i>Larus bulleri</i>) (see Appendix 6). In addition, tuatara, which is a taonga species, can be found in good numbers, particularly on offshore islands, and there have been confirmed sightings of the threatened Hector's dolphin (<i>Cephalorhynchus hectori</i>) in the Bay of Plenty.</li> <li>• <b>Sea and shore birds:</b> New Zealand has the highest number of endemic seabirds in the world. The Bay of Plenty provides habitats for a diverse range of seabird and shorebird species, over 40% of which breed here. These include threatened and at-risk birds, such as taranui / Caspian tern (<i>Hydroprogne caspia</i>) and toanui / flesh-footed shearwater (<i>Puffinus carneipes</i>) (see Appendix 6).</li> <li>• <b>Coastal ngahere:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Coastal ngahere reserves on the mainland, such as the Matata and Orokawa scenic reserves, provide a range of ngahere habitats that are dominated by pōhutukawa. Some of these ngahere still support populations of native fauna and flora, such as kuia/muttonbirds and the threatened Pimelea tomentosa</li> <li>- Sandspits and harbours provide important breeding, wintering and feeding grounds for indigenous shorebirds, such as tūturiwhatu / New Zealand dotterel and tarāpuka / black-billed gull. Matakana Island, which is at the entrance to Tauranga Harbour and contains the Matakana Island Wildlife Refuge, is New Zealand's largest sand barrier island and one of New Zealand's top breeding sites for tūturiwhatu / New Zealand dotterels.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Estuaries, saltmarshes and mangroves:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Estuaries, saltmarshes and mangrove habitat such as are present in the Athenree Wildlife Refuge Reserve, the Jess Road, Waihi Harbour Wildlife Management Reserve and Okoro-Thornton Lagoon wildlife management reserves, the Huntress Creek (Hikutawatawa) and Nukuhou Saltmarsh conservation areas, and other reserves in Ōhiwa Harbour perform a vital role in maintaining coastal water quality. They also provide important habitat for many fishes and birds, such as the threatened matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern, the at-risk mātātā/fernbird and shellfish.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<p><b>Values</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The mouth of the Waioeka and Ōtara rivers (Huntress Creek Conservation Area – Hikutawatawa) is an important whitebait spawning site in the Bay of Plenty, including for īnanga (<i>Galaxias maculatus</i>). The Maketu Estuary, which is partly contained within the Maketu Wildlife Management Reserve, and the Tarawera River mouth in the Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve are other examples of important whitebait spawning grounds.</li> <li>- Tauranga Harbour contains one of New Zealand’s largest estuaries, which comprises tidal flats and channels and includes the Waikareao Estuary Wildlife Refuge and Jess Road Wildlife Management Reserve. It contains most of the seagrass and estuarine wetlands in the region.</li> <li>- The Athenree Wildlife Refuge Reserve contains mainly saltmarsh wetlands, which provide habitat for native birds and are home to several threatened and at-risk species, including moho pererū / banded rail and tūturiwhatu / New Zealand dotterel, which are known to nest here.</li> <li>- Okorero – Thornton Lagoon Wildlife Management Reserve is a rare coastal saline lagoon with high biodiversity values and is home to species such as mauhauaitu / grey mullet (<i>Mugil cephalus</i>) and weweia / New Zealand dabchick (<i>Poliiocephalus rufopectus</i>).</li> <li>- The SH2 Conservation Area at Matatā near the mouth of the Tarawera River contains the largest remnant of Thornton kānuka (<i>Kunzea toelkenii</i>) on public conservation lands and waters.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Offshore islands:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Karewa Island Wildlife Sanctuary is an animal-pest-free island sanctuary and home to several threatened and at-risk species, including tuatara, kekeno / New Zealand fur seal, toanui / flesh-footed shearwater and nau / Cook’s scurvy grass (<i>Lepidium oleraceum</i>). The island is to be returned to tangata whenua.</li> <li>- The Motuotau Island Scenic Reserve supports native coastal and ngahere vegetation and is home to native species, including kororā / little blue penguin. The island is to be returned to tangata whenua.</li> <li>- Islands not managed by the Department: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Mayor Island (Tuhua) (managed by the Tuhua Trust Board), Rūrīma Island and Motunau (Plate Island) are wildlife refuges/sanctuaries and animal-pest-free islands and are home to healthy introduced populations of numerous threatened native species.</li> <li>- Privately owned islands include White Island Scenic Reserve (Te Puia Whakaari), Mōtītī Island and Matakana Island, which provide habitat for a variety of seabirds and native ngahere.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Islands not managed by the Department:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Mayor Island (Tuhua) (managed by the Tuhua Trust Board), Rūrīma Island and Motunau (Plate Island) are wildlife refuges/sanctuaries and animal-pest-free islands and are home to healthy introduced populations of numerous threatened native species.</li> <li>- Privately owned islands include White Island Scenic Reserve (Te Puia Whakaari), Mōtītī Island and Matakana Island, which provide habitat for a variety of seabirds and native ngahere.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p><b>a) Issue:</b> Fishing (both recreational and commercial) is the most significant threat to coastal and offshore marine biodiversity. The two marine reserves in this Place (Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae o Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki)) are the only areas in the Bay of Plenty that are fully protected as marine protected areas.<sup>12</sup> Furthermore, while other areas in the Bay of Plenty are protected under mechanisms such as mātaītai reserves (areas where tangata whenua manage all non-commercial fishing by making bylaws) and customary fisheries regulations, marine and coastal habitats and ecosystems are under-represented in New Zealand’s marine protected areas network, with only 0.2% of the North Eastern Coastal Biogeographic Region, of which the Bay of Plenty is a part, protected in marine reserves and only 2.6% of this region protected in marine reserves or some other form of marine protected area.</p> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity for the Department to work with others and to facilitate collaborative efforts in expanding the marine protected areas network.</p>

<sup>12</sup> Ministry of Fisheries; Department of Conservation 2008: Marine protected areas: classification, protection standard and implementation guidelines. Ministry of Fisheries and Department of Conservation, Wellington. 54 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/conservation/marine-and-coastal/marine-protected-areas/mpa-classification-protection-standard.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/conservation/marine-and-coastal/marine-protected-areas/mpa-classification-protection-standard.pdf)

<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p><b>b) Issue:</b> Sedimentation from changes in land use has the second biggest impact on marine ecosystems after fishing and can lead to declines in species, habitats and ecosystems in coastal and marine areas.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement and regional and district plans contain provisions to reduce sedimentation causing impacts in coastal areas. The Department has a role in advocating through the Resource Management Act processes to ensure that any adverse effects of sedimentation resulting from activities are avoided, remedied or mitigated (also see section 9: Te Mauri o te Wai Place).</p> <p><b>c) Issue:</b> There is currently limited understanding of the likely risks and impacts of climate change, examples of which include the loss of or damage to coastal ecosystems and important breeding habitats due to erosion, contamination and sedimentation of coastal and estuarine habitats as a result of increased or changed stormwater flows, the loss of important breeding habitat, acidification of the oceans, and changes in feeding zones.</p> <p><b>d) Issue:</b> Marine and coastal ecosystems face numerous threats. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dune ecosystems are threatened by habitat loss and degradation from grazing, vehicles, pest plant invasion and predation;</li> <li>• estuary and harbour ecosystems are threatened by activities within their catchments, such as land-use change, which can result in higher nutrient levels and sedimentation; and</li> <li>• subdivision and tracks for recreational use (e.g. four-wheel-drive vehicles) can lead to habitat loss and fragmentation, wildlife disturbance, increased pest plant encroachment, increased predation (e.g. from dogs and cats), and disruption of wildlife movement, particularly in dune and coastal ngahere ecosystems.</li> </ul> <p><b>Opportunity:</b> The Department has a role to increase awareness of these issues and to advocate for better conservation outcomes, including through statutory processes.</p> <p><b>e) Issue:</b> Estuarine animals, such as the threatened matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern, are impacted by mammalian predators.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department can target projects to reduce mammalian predators in harbour, estuarine and dune areas.</p> <p><b>f) Issue:</b> Illegal fishing, discharges and the disturbance of wildlife or natural features have the potential to threaten the health of the Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) marine reserves.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department has a role in increasing awareness of marine reserve values, ensuring people comply with legislative requirements and advocating for improved protection of surrounding marine areas.</p> <p><b>g) Issue:</b> The major threats to islands and their biodiversity are the reintroduction or new incursions of pest animal and plant species and fire.  <b>Opportunity:</b> A continued requirement for the active management of animal-pest-free offshore islands is necessary to ensure the natural values of these islands are not comprised or undermined. For islands managed by the Department, visitors are encouraged but regulated to ensure there are no adverse effects on the endangered species that are present.</p> <p><b>h) Issue:</b> Public disturbance of marine mammals is an issue in this Place.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is a moratorium on new concessions for marine mammal viewing to avoid exacerbating issues of public disturbance. Greater education, advocacy and public management are required, particularly at high-use sites such as Tauranga, Mount Maunganui and Whakatāne, to ensure that marine mammal populations are protected.</p> <p><b>i) Issue:</b> The increasing number of ships and boats using Tauranga Harbour is resulting in whale strikes, increased marine biosecurity threats and the anchoring of vessels within rat-swimming distance of animal-pest-free islands.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department can continue to work closely with the Ministry of Transport, Ministry for Primary Industries and Bay of Plenty Regional Council on marine biosecurity issues, particularly regarding the operations of the Port of Tauranga.</p>
--	--



<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p>j) <b>Issue:</b> Whitebait species are in decline.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department's work in partnership with others to enhance whitebait spawning grounds in wetlands, river mouths and riparian areas, such as in the Kaituna River, Maketu Stream, Ōtara River and Tarawera River mouth, can be expanded.</p> <p>k) <b>Opportunity:</b> The Nukuhou Saltmarsh Conservation Area is a saltmarsh of high conservation value that contains threatened fauna. The SH2 Conservation Area at Matatā near the mouth of the Tarawera River contains the largest remnant of Thornton kānuka on public conservation lands and waters. During the life of this CMS, the Department intends to investigate reclassification of these sites alongside other potential sites with significant value. See Policy 4.1.6 and Appendix 12 for further information.</p> <p>l) <b>Opportunity:</b> Marine and coastal research is occurring in the region, including through initiatives such as the Waikato University's Coastal Marine Field Station. Working cooperatively with research and tertiary institutions can enhance knowledge and lead to new and innovative solutions to marine and coastal issues.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>8.3.3.1 Facilitate the formation of a regional marine protection forum by working with tangata whenua, the Ministry for Primary Industries, conservation stakeholders and the wider community.</p> <p>8.3.3.2 Investigate and support cooperative opportunities to build a nationally representative network of marine protected areas and marine reserves, with an emphasis on the priority marine ecosystems listed in Appendix 8, in collaboration with tangata whenua, the Bay of Plenty Regional Council, marine users and those with an interest in marine diversity.</p> <p>8.3.3.3 Work with others to identify gaps in the marine protection network, including areas of ecological importance, that would make an optimal contribution to marine biodiversity protection in the Bay of Plenty and to a national network of marine protected areas.</p> <p>8.3.3.4 Work with tangata whenua, relevant agencies and conservation stakeholders to manage or avoid threats to marine mammals and their habitats.</p> <p>8.3.3.5 Prioritise statutory advocacy to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) safeguard, preserve and protect coastal habitats, including through the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement and regional coastal plan processes; and</li> <li>b) conserve marine species and significant marine habitats and ecosystems.</li> </ul> <p>8.3.3.6 Ensure effective compliance and law enforcement within the marine reserves and on animal-pest-free islands that are managed by the Department, working in conjunction with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders.</p> <p>8.3.3.7 Increase awareness of marine biodiversity values, manage any adverse impacts on the marine ecosystem and promote positive involvement in, and protection and enjoyment of, marine protected areas in collaboration with tangata whenua, relevant agencies, the community, fishers and the tourism industry.</p> <p>8.3.3.8 Support the Ministry for Primary Industries and Bay of Plenty Regional Council to prevent the introduction and spread of new pests by creating, maintaining and implementing effective biosecurity measures, particularly in relation to the operations of the Port of Tauranga.</p> <p>8.3.3.9 Continue to grow and develop the Department's marine mammal stranding response by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) continuing to increase active involvement by tangata whenua;</li> <li>b) supporting the involvement of scientific researchers and other interested parties when strandings occur; and</li> <li>c) promoting cultural practices, including access to cultural materials.</li> </ul>

<b>Policies</b>	<p>8.3.3.10 Manage all islands administered by the Department in accordance with the purposes for which they are held and the guidance provided on issues identified in Appendix 4, and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) prevent the introduction and spread of new pests by creating, maintaining and implementing effective biosecurity measures; and</li> <li>b) apply an integrated approach to the management of public conservation lands and waters and marine areas adjacent to offshore islands that are administered by the Department.</li> </ul> <p>8.3.3.11 Work with others to increase the protection and enhancement of coastal dune habitats, estuaries and harbours from the adverse effects of development, the spread of pest plants and animals, vehicle use, and stock incursions by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) actively managing public conservation lands and waters;</li> <li>b) supporting the work of conservation groups and other conservation stakeholders; and</li> <li>c) raising the public's awareness of the vulnerability of these habitats.</li> </ul> <p>8.3.3.12 Should grant authorisations for scientific study within the marine reserves where any adverse effects to the marine environment would be of a minor/ temporary nature, and work cooperatively with research and tertiary institutions to maximise the benefits of monitoring and research on marine species and ecosystems.</p> <p>8.3.3.13 Seek rehabilitation of whitebait spawning habitats in conjunction with the Bay of Plenty Regional Council and landowners.</p> <p>8.3.3.14 Continue to partner with owners of animal-pest-free offshore islands such as Mayor Island (Tuhua), Rūrima Island (Ngā Moutere ō Rūrima), Motunau (Plate Island) and Whakaari/White Island, to support conservation efforts, and encourage and support these owners to work towards these islands becoming animal pest free.</p>
-----------------	---

<b>8.3.4 Historic Values</b>	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Rich archaeological heritage:</b> The Coastal and Marine Place contains approximately 38% of the archaeological sites in the region, including pā, middens, ovens, pits, Māori horticulture sites and defensive ditches, reflecting the importance of the coast in historic settlement patterns and resource use.</li> <li>• <b>Ōhiwa Harbour:</b> Ōhiwa Harbour has a rich history and is fringed by many archaeological sites, including the Paparoa Pa, Tokitoki and Matekerepu historic reserves, which contain well-preserved pā and extensive midden sites, demonstrating the historical coastal settlement patterns of tangata whenua.</li> <li>• <b>Shipwrecks:</b> The Bay of Plenty coast was used as a supply and trading route by Māori, who used offshore islands for temporary residence and supplies. Later, the coastal and marine areas were used for European settlement and trading routes. Numerous shipwrecks provide historic artefacts that help tell the stories from this time, including the wreck of the steamer Taranaki, which ran into Karewa Island in 1878 and still remains today, and the wreck of the steamer Taupo, which foundered near Mayor Island (Tuhua) in 1881 and is the only shipwreck recorded in the New Zealand archaeological files. Other notable shipwrecks include the wreck of the MV Rena on the Astrolabe Reef, the MV Taioma near Mōtītī Island and the MV Cirrus near the Tauranga Harbour entrance.</li> <li>• See Appendix 10 for further information on actively conserved historic sites in this Place.</li> </ul>

<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> Many of the Department’s actively conserved historic sites are found in and around Ōhiwa Harbour.  <b>Opportunity:</b> An Ōhiwa Harbour heritage trail is being developed by the Bay of Plenty Regional Council in partnership with several organisations, and there is an opportunity for the Department to support this initiative.</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> The recreational use of dune areas can conflict with historic values. For example, vehicle use in dunes at the Stewardship Area Huntress Creek Burial Area (Hikutawatawa) is threatening urupā within the site.  <b>Opportunity:</b> It may be necessary to provide better information at sites, educate recreational users so they understand the importance of historic sites, or undertake active management to conserve and protect historic sites.</p> <p>c) <b>Opportunity:</b> A current project to extend a cycle trail from Whakatāne to Mōtū along the dunes is underway, and there is an opportunity to tell stories of famous battle and pā sites at points along this trail.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>8.3.4.1 Support initiatives to develop a heritage trail at Ōhiwa Harbour in collaboration with tangata whenua, the Bay of Plenty Regional Council and conservation stakeholders.</p> <p>8.3.4.2 Actively seek opportunities for the Motu Trails Trust to provide historical interpretation along the Motu Trails.</p>



Whangakopikopiko Island Ōhiwa Harbour. Neil Hutton Photography



Bittern Ōhiwa Harbour. Neil Hutton Photography



8.3.5	Recreation values
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Range of recreation opportunities:</b> The Bay of Plenty coast is well known for the recreational activities associated with its long, sandy beaches and sheltered bays, with popular activities including camping, fishing, surfing, snorkelling and kayaking. The Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) marine reserves in the Coastal and Marine Place provide a range of water-based recreation opportunities, including excellent sites for diving.</li> <li>• <b>Gathering of kai:</b> Coastal and marine areas provide important mahinga kai sites for local communities, such as those at Waiotaha, Ōhiwa and Maketu.</li> <li>• <b>Marine mammal observation:</b> Marine mammal observation occurs both on shore (e.g. kekeno / New Zealand fur seals) and offshore (e.g. dolphin and whale watching tours).</li> <li>• <b>Diving:</b> There are many diving sites in the Bay of Plenty region, including at Tuhua (Mayor Island) Marine Reserve, Astrolabe Reef and the Rena shipwreck), Mōtītī Island and Motuhaku Island (Schooner Rocks). Several well-known shipwrecks in the region also provide attractive sites for diving (see section 8.3.4: Historic values above).</li> <li>• <b>Coastal walks:</b> Coastal tracks provide walking access along the coast and to the beach. The Orokawa Bay Track is a particularly popular walking track that passes through uncommon remnants of coastal ngahere and has beautiful coastal views. The 16-km-long coastal and bush Ngā Tapuwae o Toi ('Footprints of Toi') walkway is easily accessible from Ōhope and includes pā sites, native ngahere, and panoramic views of the volcanic peaks of Whakaari/White Island (Te Puia Whakaari) and inland to Mount Tarawera. The Fairbrother Loop Walk is part of this walkway and provides a short walking track from the beach at Ōhope into the ngahere and back. There are also several tracks at Homunga and Orokawa bays near Waihi and on Mount Maunganui (Mauao) that are popular for day walks and offer beautiful views of Tauranga, Mount Maunganui and out to sea. The Tirohanga Dunes Trail, which is part of the Motu Trails, meanders over dunes and beaches and offers panoramic views of the Pacific Ocean, Whakaari/White Island (Te Puia Whakaari) and Moutohora Island.</li> <li>• <b>Matatā Campsite:</b> The Matatā Campsite is a family-friendly campsite located in a coastal setting, and the adjacent Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve has facilities that enable visitors to enjoy views of Moutohora Island and Whakaari/White Island (Te Puia Whakaari).</li> <li>• <b>Cycling:</b> Cycling is a popular activity in coastal areas of the Bay of Plenty. The Tirohanga Dunes Trail is an easy gravel path that runs parallel with the Bay of Plenty coastline for around 10 km and forms part of the New Zealand Cycle Trail.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) <b>Opportunity:</b> There are opportunities to partner with others to further develop recreation opportunities, improve visitor access, and raise awareness of conservation values and issues in relation to coastal and marine areas in the Bay of Plenty region.</li> <li>b) <b>Issue:</b> Vehicles, dogs and visitors can damage sensitive dune vegetation, accelerate erosion, expose areas to pest plant invasion, and disturb vulnerable shorebird species and impact on their breeding success, especially at important breeding, feeding and wintering sites such as Matakana Island, Maketu Spit and Ōhiwa Harbour.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department can work with others and increase advocacy to improve awareness and visitor behaviour to protect these sensitive, fragile coastal habitats and species from human disturbance. Managed access could be needed in some areas, as well as educating visitors to understand the need to behave responsibly and protect taonga. Marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 (see Part One and section 10.8).</li> <li>c) <b>Opportunity:</b> There are opportunities to work with others to extend the Tirohanga Dunes Trail through to Whakatāne and the Tauranga trails via Ōmokoroa to Waihi and onwards to the Karangahake Gorge as part of a wider project to link Auckland (Tāmaki Makaurau) to Tauranga and on to Rotorua.</li> <li>d) <b>Issue:</b> The Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) marine reserves are some distance from shore, limiting visitor access for recreational uses such as diving.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The proposal to expand the marine protected areas network for biodiversity purposes offers an opportunity to improve accessibility for visitors by considering a site or sites closer to the shore.</li> </ul>

8.3.5	Recreation values
	<p>e) <b>Opportunity:</b> Collaboration with the Whakatāne District Council can ensure that visitors have a consistent experience that is of a high standard across the whole network of Ngā Tapuwāe ō Toi tracks, both on and off public conservation lands and waters.</p> <p>f) <b>Issue:</b> There is increasing pressure from the community to upgrade facilities and reinstate the walking track in the Matata Scenic Reserve.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Matatā Campsite is becoming increasingly popular and the Department has the opportunity to work with councils and other conservation stakeholders to improve the visitor experience and access.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	<p>8.3.5.1 Work with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders to educate the public on the importance of the Coastal and Marine Place in providing valuable habitat for a variety of plants and animals, to inform them of the role they can play in protecting these habitats, and to tell visitors the stories of coastal and marine conservation.</p> <p>8.3.5.2 Identify, provide and manage recreation opportunities in this Place that are consistent with visitor destinations planning, including considerations of demand, costs and benefits, revenue opportunities, and carrying capacity.</p> <p>8.3.5.3 Work with councils and other conservation stakeholders to improve access and the visitor experience at the Matatā Campsite, Matata Scenic Reserve and Matata Wildlife Refuge.</p> <p>8.3.5.4 Support others in initiatives to develop cycleways along the coast, such as at Tirohanga and Tauranga, that enhance conservation outcomes and do not result in adverse ecological impacts, including on threatened species.</p> <p>8.3.5.5 Maintain open public access to Tuhua (Mayor Island) and Te Paepae Aotea (Volkner Rocks) (Paepae te Hawaiki) marine reserves, only restricting public access where necessary to protect specific marine flora and fauna or to avoid disturbing temporary scientific experiments.</p> <p>8.3.5.6 Seek to have the Ngā Tapuwāe ō Toi walkway identified as a Great Day Hike or similar national classification.</p> <p>8.3.5.7 Work in collaboration with the Whakatane District Council and other conservation stakeholders to ensure that all sections of the Ngā Tapuwāe ō Toi walkway function as an integrated network, both on and off public conservation lands and waters.</p>



Elephant seal Whakatāne. Neil Hutton Photography

## Milestones for Coastal and Marine Place

Natural values	Historic values	Recreation values
<p><b>Active involvement</b></p> <p>1. Developed a formal marine mammal stranding protocol with tangata whenua (year 4).</p> <p><b>Marine protected areas</b></p> <p>2. Supported the establishment of a marine protected areas forum or working group(s) (year 1).</p> <p>3. Identified optimal areas for biodiversity conservation in the Bay of Plenty (year 4).</p> <p>4. Actively supported processes that resulted in an expanded network of marine protected areas (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p> <p><b>Pest-free islands</b></p> <p>5. Ensured that animal-pest-free Crown-owned and Department-administered islands remain free of introduced animals (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p> <p>6. Reduced key ecological pest plant species to zero density and prevented new species from establishing through regular surveillance (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p> <p><b>Reserves</b></p> <p>7. Reclassified the SH2 and Nukuhou Saltmarsh conservation areas from stewardship land to a status that provides more protection for their conservation values (year 7).</p> <p><b>Threatened species</b></p> <p>8. Restored a viable Thornton kānuka vegetation community in the SH2 Conservation Area and nearby areas of public conservation lands and waters to provide linkages with nearby populations of this species (Year 4).</p> <p><b>Local community</b></p> <p>9. Gained an understanding of the current level of work-day equivalents delivered by others to support conservation in this Place (year 1).</p> <p>10. Increased the number of work-day equivalents delivered by others to support conservation in this Place by 10% (years 4, 7 &amp; 10).</p>	<p>See section 3.5: Regional milestones in Part One.</p>	<p><b>Matatā Campsite</b></p> <p>11. Investigated changing the status of the Matatā Campsite from a 'basic' campground to a 'scenic' campground (year 1).</p>



## 9. Te Mauri o te Wai Place

**Kei te ora te wai, kei te ora te whenua, kei te ora te tangata.**

**When the water is healthy, the land and the people are healthy.**

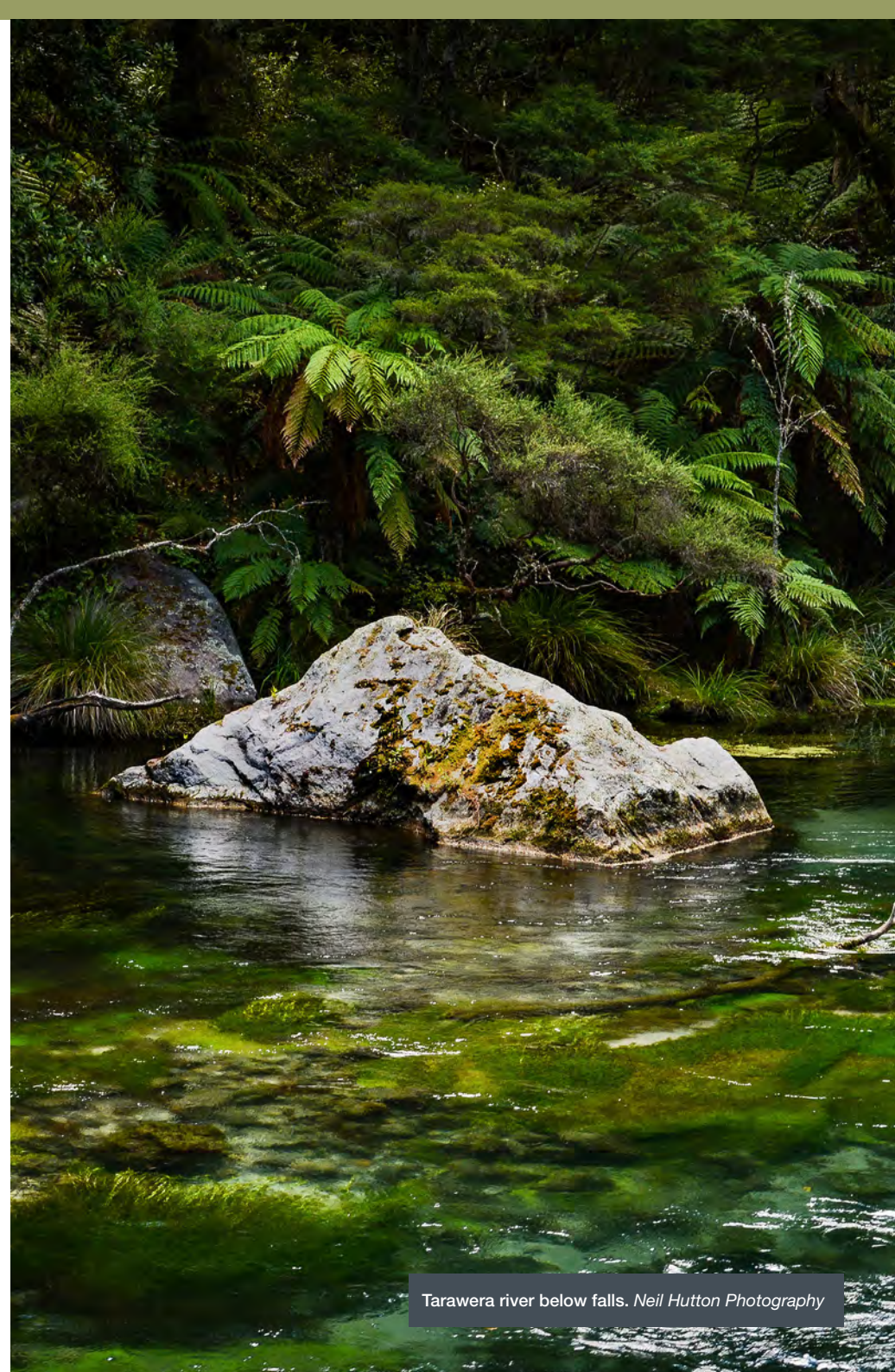
For Māori, water is the essence of all life, akin to the blood of Papatūānuku (Earth mother), who supports all people, plants and animals. The name for this Place – Te Mauri o te Wai – encompasses the Māori view that water has its own mauri or life force, and that it is important to manage fresh water holistically.

### 9.1 Overview

The Te Mauri o te Wai Place encompasses all freshwater ecosystems within the Bay of Plenty region, with an emphasis on wetlands, for which the Department has a greater leadership role.

Freshwater ecosystems in the region include puna, awa, roto, wetlands and riparian areas, which interconnect as entire catchments, from the maunga to the moana – ki uta ki tai. Waterways in the region flow through a variety of contrasting land uses, including relatively undisturbed native ngahere, plantation ngahere, agricultural land (including dairy and beef farming, horticulture, and cropping) and urban areas.

A regular, sustained supply of good quality water is essential for the proper functioning of our freshwater ecosystems. Water quality and quantity have been the major factors impacting on lowland ecosystems in the Bay of Plenty, many of which are now 'perched' and cut off from their natural water sources as a result of drainage, control structures and stop banking. Furthermore, in many ecosystems, particularly nutrient-poor bogs and mires, enhanced nutrient levels from surrounding land use have led to







Kōwhai over the Motu River. Neil Hutton Photography

potential changes in vegetation communities, with increasing numbers of pest plant species becoming established.

Freshwater ecosystems are a fundamental part of the culture and wellbeing of the people of the region and are understood to be coexisting with the land in te ao Māori. Tangata whenua have strong links with water, which is considered a taonga of which Māori are the kaitiaki.

**Freshwater conservation:** The management of freshwater ecosystems is complex, as multiple iwi and hapū, land tenures, and agencies are involved. Regional councils have the primary responsibility for freshwater management, including maintaining or enhancing water quality and allocating water from awa and groundwater. In contrast to land-based ecosystems, few entire freshwater catchments are protected and/or managed by the Department. This Place provides a framework to guide the Department's statutory responsibilities for freshwater conservation which, in summary, are to:

- actively manage freshwater sites within public conservation lands and waters for conservation purposes; and
- seek conservation outcomes for significant freshwater ecosystems outside public conservation lands and waters through advocacy, including the preservation, as far as is practicable, of indigenous freshwater fisheries and the protection of recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats. Much of this work is achieved through advocacy and partnership with Treaty partners and others.

The Department's other functions, which include managing historic resources for conservation purposes and fostering recreation, apply where sites are within public conservation lands and waters.

**Wetlands:** Wetland management is the principal focus for the Department, which administers numerous wetlands in the region and takes the lead role in the active management of often entire wetland areas, often alongside Fish & Game New Zealand. Wetlands were once plentiful in the Bay of Plenty region, but only a small fraction remain today, making them a rare and important habitat for indigenous biodiversity. Those wetlands that do remain face multiple threats, including changes to hydrological processes and pest species. The region has a range of wetlands, include freshwater,

geothermal (see section 5: Waiariki Place) and estuarine (see section 8: Coastal and Marine Place). Furthermore, the freshwater wetlands span a range of types, including bogs, fens, swamps, marshes and seepages, and are home to a range of flora and fauna, such as the threatened matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern and the at-risk swamp leek orchid (*Prasophyllum hectorii*).

**Awa:** Awa flow from the maunga to the moana, and the Bay of Plenty region's boundary dissects many awa catchments, the largest of which include the Waikato, Waihou, Rangitaiki, Mohaka, Wairoa, Waioeka and Mōtū catchments. There are approximately 27 400 km of awa within the region, which vary in size from small streams to large rivers such as the Rangitaiki which, at approximately 155 km long, is the longest river in the region. Ecosystem values in awa can be affected by changes in water quality, such as nutrient enrichment and sedimentation, changes in water flows and impeded fish passage.

**Roto:** The region contains numerous roto of high cultural value, such as Lake Rotokawau and the Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes (also see section 5: Waiariki Place). Pest fishes and plants and nutrient enrichment are impacting on the ecological values of these roto.

Historically, tangata whenua used wetlands, awa and roto extensively as sources of kai, resources for shelter and transport routes, and wetlands have also been used for burial purposes. Early European exploration and trading were also focused around waterways, with the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Category 1 listed historic Tauranga harp suspension bridge across the Waioeka River providing an important example of historic heritage that illustrates early European settlement patterns.

Recreational use of the awa, roto and wetlands in this Place is widespread and varied, including both water-based activities, such as whitebaiting, fishing, swimming, kayaking, boating, rafting and game-bird hunting, and land-based activities in riparian areas, such as walking and wildlife viewing. Tuna / longfin and shortfin eels (*Anguilla dieffenbachii* and *Anguilla australis*) are taonga species for tangata whenua across the region and an important source of kai. Wetlands in the region also provide recreation opportunities, such as walks, bird watching and waterfowl hunting.

---

<sup>13</sup> <https://waikatoriver.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/Vision-and-Strategy-Reprint-2019web.pdf>

## 9.2 Outcomes

### This section describes the outcomes being sought for this Place – what it will be like in 10 years' time.

Freshwater habitats within public conservation lands and waters have been protected. Ecosystems are recovering or in a healthy functioning state, as demonstrated by the improved water quality and thriving populations of native aquatic and shoreline species, including important indicator species such as whio / blue duck and weweia / New Zealand dabchick. Aquatic pests have been reduced through positive and collaborative partnerships with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders.

The stories of the historical use and cultural connections associated with the awa, roto and wetlands of this Place are told, including through well-interpreted sites, so that people feel connected with these waterways, allowing them to experience and appreciate the mauri of this Place.

The management of water and freshwater habitats is undertaken in an integrated and holistic way, being guided by the concepts of providing for the mauri of the water as a whole (including te hauora o te taiao / the health of the environment, te hauora o te wai / the health of the waterbody and te hauora o te tangata / the health of the people) and mātauranga taiao, allowing the values of tangata whenua and the wider community to be incorporated. These values are readily available, including through educational materials, and are well understood by the public, so that the mauri of the water is respected by all.

The Te Mauri o te Wai Place has special importance with respect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River – Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato,<sup>13</sup> with integrated programmes underway that improve the quality of water in the Waikato River catchment (see Appendix 13). The restoration of freshwater sites in this catchment, such as Lakes Ngapouri, Ngahewa and Tutaeinanga, has contributed to achieving this Vision and Strategy to restore the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River and its catchments for future generations.





Whoio in Whirinaki River. Neil Hutton Photography

Integrated programmes that include the intensive management of pest animals and plants have contributed to ecosystem recovery. Community programmes working with priority ecosystem units or threatened and at-risk species are underway, with a particular focus on pest management.

The Department takes a strong leadership role in wetland protection and enhancement in collaboration with tangata whenua, regional councils and territorial authorities, Fish & Game New Zealand, and other organisations. The region is recognised for the diversity and range of wetland habitats that are protected, both on and off public conservation lands and waters, and wetlands are highly valued as ecological and cultural taonga. Wetlands are maintained and restored to ensure no further loss or degradation occurs, and the ecological integrity of some wetlands has improved. Populations of indigenous wetland flora and fauna, such as the matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern, mātātā/ fernbird, and swamp nettle (*Urtica perconfusa*) are increasing.

Awa flow freely and are protected and enhanced for conservation purposes in collaboration with the community. Intact freshwater fish habitats provide regionally and nationally important recreational fisheries, facilitated by access through public conservation lands and waters and other land. The Department's leadership and advocacy have enhanced freshwater ecosystems so that indigenous migratory species are able to journey freely to and from the moana to complete their life cycles.

The Department works collaboratively with tangata whenua, councils and conservation stakeholders to support work in improving the water quality of awa and roto in this Place and, as a result, more sites are healthy enough to support sustainable cultural harvest and are safe for recreational purposes and the gathering of kai. The importance of managing catchments in their entirety is recognised, and the catchment of at least one awa is actively being restored from its source to the moana for conservation purposes through strong partnerships with tangata whenua, regional councils and territorial authorities, landowners, and other organisations.

The health of roto has improved, and aquatic pests have been reduced as a result of work undertaken by the Department and others, such as the Te Arawa Lakes Trust, through positive and collaborative partnerships.



Indigenous riparian habitats are protected and being restored along margins of awa, roto and wetlands, creating new wildlife habitats and corridors for a rich diversity of native species and enhancing landscape and aquatic values.

Increased public access to awa, roto and wetlands provides opportunities for people to enjoy a range of recreational activities, such as fishing, swimming and other water sports, and enhances land-based activities, such as walking. Recreational activities are undertaken in harmony with ecological values, and visitors leave with a greater understanding of the ecological, cultural and heritage values. Unauthorised structures encroaching onto public conservation lands and waters have been removed or re-purposed.



## 9.3 Policies

9.3.1	Treaty of Waitangi relationships
<b>Treaty settlement information</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deeds of Recognition set out agreements between the Minister of Conservation and claimant groups in recognition of their special associations with identified sites and specify the nature of their input into the management of those sites.</li> </ul>
<b>Tangata whenua within this Place</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For Māori, water is the essence of all life, akin to the blood of Papatūānuku (Earth mother), who supports all people, plants and animals, and consequently fresh water is taonga. Waterways have formed pathways and provided sustenance for generations, and tangata whenua assert their tribal identity in relation to waterways, which have a role in whakapapa.</li> <li>• As such, all tangata whenua in the Bay of Plenty region are connected to the Te Mauri o te Wai Place. See section 2: Treaty of Waitangi relationships in Part One and Appendix 1 for more information.</li> </ul>
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tangata whenua view the health of freshwater ecosystems in this Place as a tangible representation of their mauri. These ecosystems are valued as a source of mahinga kai and cultural materials, for providing access routes and a means of travel, and for their proximity to important wāhi tapu, settlements or cultural sites.</li> <li>• Taniwha are supernatural creatures that are often thought to live in roto, awa or the moana. Taniwha can be guardians of these waterways and tangata whenua but can also have a damaging effect.</li> <li>• Tangata whenua value wetlands for their spiritual and healing properties, for their historical, cultural and traditional relationships and associations, and for their significance to tribal identity. Awa such as the Wairoa, Kaituna, Tarawera, Rangitaiki and Whakatāne rivers, flowed through wetlands and provided access by waka and on foot to the interior. These awa, together with the Te Arawa / Rotorua lakes, were a major factor in Māori settlement of the inland parts of the region.</li> <li>• Wetlands are utilised by Māori for many cultural purposes, including as traditional sources of kai and fisheries, as urupā, and for the provision of weaving resources, paru / mud dye and mahinga kai.</li> <li>• The Matata Lagoon in the Matata Wildlife Refuge has significant value to tangata whenua as the location of the Te Arawa waka landing at the mouth of the Tarawera River.</li> <li>• The Te Arawa lakes have particular cultural value as traditional fishing grounds for kai such as fishes, kōura / freshwater crayfish and kākahi / freshwater mussel (<i>Echyridella menziesii</i>). The Te Arawa Lakes Trust is a governance entity with oversight over 14 lakes in the Rotorua region.</li> <li>• The many tangata whenua of the Rangitaiki River regard it as a tīpuna, a giver of life that sustains the mauri of all within its embrace. In 2012, the Rangitāiki River Forum<sup>14</sup> was created with the purpose of protecting and enhancing the environmental, cultural and spiritual health and wellbeing of this river and its resources for the benefit of present and future generations.</li> </ul>

<sup>14</sup> [www.boprc.govt.nz/your-council/council-and-region/committees/rangitaiki-river-forum/](http://www.boprc.govt.nz/your-council/council-and-region/committees/rangitaiki-river-forum/)

<sup>15</sup> [www.boprc.govt.nz/your-council/council-and-region/council-and-committees/te-maru-o-kaituna-river-authority/](http://www.boprc.govt.nz/your-council/council-and-region/council-and-committees/te-maru-o-kaituna-river-authority/)

<sup>16</sup> [www.boprc.govt.nz/your-council/plans-and-policies/plans/regional-plans/tarawera-river-catchment-plan/](http://www.boprc.govt.nz/your-council/plans-and-policies/plans/regional-plans/tarawera-river-catchment-plan/)



<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The upper catchment of the Waikato River extends into the Bay of Plenty region. This awa is a tūpuna / ancestor to some tangata whenua, being central to tribal identity and wellbeing, and has sustained tangata whenua for many generations as a place to live, a source of kai and other resources, and a transport corridor. Tangata whenua within the region with a direct interest and special relationship with the Waikato River are Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi and Ngāti Tūwharetoa.</li> <li>• The Kaituna River is likened to a parent or provider, sustaining and nurturing the lives of those that live within its catchment. In a symbolic sense, this awa is the umbilical cord that unites traditional relationships and responsibilities. The Te Maru o Kaituna River Authority<sup>15</sup> works to protect and enhance the environmental, cultural and spiritual health and wellbeing of the Kaituna River.</li> <li>• The Tarawera River is connected with traditional kōrero. The Regional Plan for the Tarawera River Catchment<sup>16</sup> was developed primarily to manage the effects of discharges on this river.</li> <li>• The Waihou River is a taonga ancestral river, with sacred waterfalls such as Wairere and Te Arika falls. A co-governance entity is to be set up over the Waihou catchment (see Part One for settlement details).</li> </ul>
---------------	---

9.3.2 Natural values	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Wetlands:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Wetlands provide a number of important ecosystem services, including flood protection, nutrient filtering and sediment trapping. Freshwater wetlands in the Te Mauri o te Wai Place are home to a variety of native flora and fauna, such as the at-risk mātātā/fernbird, the threatened aquatic/wetland sedge (<i>Isolepis lenticularis</i>) and the threatened bladderwort <i>Utricularia australis</i> (see Appendix 6).</li> <li>- The Bay of Plenty is home to a variety of wetland types, including bogs, fens, swamps, marshes and seepages. Some important representative examples of these include the following wetlands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whirinaki (Hautapu) Bog – This is the highest ranked wetland site in the Bay of Plenty biogeographic area under the Wetland Ecosystems of National Importance (WONI) classification, which seeks to ensure a representative range of wetland types across New Zealand.</li> <li>• Kaituna wetland in the Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve – This represents the largest area of original wetland remaining in the region and is home to several threatened and at-risk species, including the pūweto / spotless crane and matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern (see Appendix 6).</li> <li>• Tumurau Lagoon – This provides an excellent example of a large wetland system with associated lagoon wetland. It is home to the at-risk fern <i>Cyclosorus interruptus</i> and the threatened matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern.</li> <li>• Matata Lagoon in the Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve – As the largest coastal freshwater lagoon in the region, the Matata Lagoon has high biodiversity values. It is a remnant wetland of the original Tarawera River estuary.</li> <li>• Awaiti Wildlife Management Reserve – This perched wetland is a rare remnant of the original Rangitaiki Plain wetland and is co-managed with Eastern Region Fish &amp; Game.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Awa:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The Whirinaki River catchment is notable as being home to the second largest population of whio / blue duck in New Zealand and is a priority site for whio persistence in this region.</li> <li>- The Moerangi and Wairoa streams flow entirely through unmodified native ngahere within the Whirinaki and Te Urewera areas and sustain strong whio populations and healthy aquatic populations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- **Awa continued:**
  - As rivers of national importance, both the Mōtū and Mohaka rivers are subject to water conservation orders over parts of their lengths, which is the highest level of protection that can be afforded to any waterbody.
  - The Haparapara and Waikakariki rivers in the eastern Bay of Plenty are recognised as having high freshwater ecological values due to their high diversity of native fish species and absence of introduced tarauta/trout.
  - Many of the awa in the eastern part of the region, such as the Hawaii, Haparapara, Waikakariki, Kereu and Raukokore rivers, have catchments that are almost entirely in primary vegetation, which is rare elsewhere in the region.
  - The Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park sustains the headwaters for much of the Paeroa, Te Aroha, Katikati, Tauranga and Matamata municipal drinking water supplies, as well as the Kaimai hydroelectric power scheme.
  - Marginal strips and public conservation lands and waters alongside awa can play an important role in protecting banks and filtering sediments as water flows into the awa, which maintains water quality, and in providing whitebait and non-migratory galaxiid spawning habitat downstream of the saltwater wedge.
  - The Waikato River provides a range of habitats for native fauna and flora, supporting significant native fisheries and nationally threatened and at-risk species.
- **Roto:**
  - Lake Kiriopukae near Lake Waikaremoana is a priority management unit. It is home to a number of threatened and at-risk species, such as Lady's tresses orchid (*Spiranthes novae-zelandiae*) and curly sedge (*Carex cirrhosa*).
  - There are 14 roto in the Rotorua region that are managed through the Rotorua Te Arawa Lakes Programme,<sup>17</sup> which is a partnership between iwi, the Te Arawa Lakes Trust, the Bay of Plenty Regional Council and the Rotorua District Council.
  - Some roto in the Rotorua area form a national stronghold for weweia / New Zealand dabchick, which requires a high water quality and so is an indicator of freshwater health in lakes.
  - The roto in the region are home to threatened species, such as *Carex cirrhosa* and *Amphibromus fluitans* on the edge of Lake Rerewhakaaitu, the bladderwort *Utricularia australis* at Lake Rotohoko, and water millfoil (*Myriophyllum robustum*) at Lake Rotohokahoka. The threatened tarāpuka / black-billed gull breeds on the shores of Lake Rotorua/Te Rotorua nui ā Kahumatamomoe, which is also the second most important site in the North Island for the at-risk tarāpunga / red-billed gull (*Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus*).
  - A range of small and sometimes ephemeral lakelets exist on public conservation lands and waters within the region that remain relatively pristine, surrounded by indigenous ngahere and largely free of the key aquatic and wetland pest plants and fish species. These include Lake Hiwiroa (in the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park), Lake Rotohoko (in the Mamaku Forest Conservation Area), Lake Rotohokahoka (in the Mokaihaha Ecological Area in the Horohoro Conservation Area), Te Pu mires (in the Mangorewa Forest Conservation Area), Lake Kiriopukae (in the Onepoto Conservation Area) and Lake Mangatutara (in the Raukumara Conservation Park).
- **Freshwater species:**
  - Threatened invertebrates in this Place include the freshwater mussel *Echyridella menziesii* and the caddisfly *Edpercivalia borealis* (see Appendix 6).
  - Twenty native freshwater fish species have been recorded within the region, 15 of which are diadromous, meaning they migrate between freshwater environments and the moana for part of their life cycle and so require unimpeded access to and from the moana. Ten freshwater fish species are at risk or threatened, including kōaro (*Galaxias brevipinnis*), which is one of the region's diadromous species and is declining.
  - The region's catchments are home to some of the largest populations of whio / blue duck in the country due to the contiguous ngahere and interconnected catchments throughout the eastern parts of the region providing connected habitat corridors. Whio can be an indicator species of freshwater health in awa as they require clean and clear water conditions.
  - The matuku hūrepo / Australasian bittern is a wetland bird that is ranked as Nationally Critical and facing multiple threats, including habitat destruction, a lack of food supply and predation.
  - The region is home to New Zealand's northernmost population of warf galaxias (*Galaxias divergens*), which is a non-migratory galaxiid. Recent work has shown that this population has become genetically distinct from other New Zealand populations and could soon become its own species. The population is at threat from loss of habitat, humans and non-native fish predators.

## Issues and opportunities

- a) Issue:** Freshwater ecosystems in this Place are impacted by changes in the water cycle, drainage, pollution and sedimentation, nutrient enrichment, vegetation clearance, fire, hydroelectrical schemes, flood protection schemes, and invasion by pests. These impacts have had significant consequences for freshwater biodiversity in the region, which is vulnerable to changes in water quality, water flows, predation, and habitat loss and degradation.
- Opportunity:** The Department intends to advocate through statutory processes for the enhancement of water quality and awa flows that maintain natural processes and for the protection of priority ecosystem units and threatened and at-risk species.
- b) Issue:** The management of freshwater ecosystems is complex, with multiple iwi/hapū, land tenures and agencies involved. Only small proportions of the catchments in the Bay of Plenty region are protected.
- Opportunity:** The Department works closely with tangata whenua and others on freshwater management. For example, it works with multiple agencies, such as through the Manaaki Kaimai Mamaku Forum, to improve ecological functions and water quality in the Kaimai and Mamaku catchments, and is a member of the Bay of Plenty Regional Council's Regional Water Advisory Panel. The Department is seeking to maintain these connections and increase involvement in other freshwater initiatives throughout the region.
- c) Issue:** Changes to waterways, such as reduced fish passage, changes in flows, sedimentation and increases in nutrients, can reduce ecosystem values. For example, these changes can reduce habitat quality and inhibit fish migration, threatening native species at various stages of their life cycles, including whitebait, non-migratory galaxiids and tuna/eels, which are taonga species of tangata whenua.
- Opportunity:** The Department intends to advocate through statutory processes and work with others to maintain and enhance fish passage and to advocate for awa flows that maintain natural processes. There are good examples of work already underway, including a privately owned trap and transfer programme, which facilitates the migration of elver (juvenile) tuna/eels and other native fishes upstream of the dam at Lake Matahina – the only system of its type in New Zealand.
- d) Issue:** Climate change presents significant risks to freshwater ecosystems by affecting the timing, amount and intensity of rainfall. Sea level rise could impact on aquifers, and both the demand for and availability of water could change because of climate changes. Flood events are likely to increase and conversely drought events could become more common. Erosion, scouring and increased sedimentation resulting from changes in water flows can damage ecosystems.
- Opportunity:** A whole-of-catchment management approach could mitigate the effects of climate change on freshwater ecosystems in numerous ways – for example, by managing water flows within catchments, stabilising the banks of waterways, increasing resilience of freshwater ecosystems and enhancing the integrity of ngahere ecosystems through pest control.
- e) Issue:** All of the remaining wetlands in the region are relatively small, with the lower Kaituna wetlands being the largest at 190 ha. Wetlands that are less than 500 ha in area are more vulnerable than larger wetlands to threats, which include:
- nutrient and sediment inputs;
  - invasive pest plants, such as grey willow and crack willow (*Salix fragilis*), swamp grass (*Glyceria maxima*), parrot's feather (*Myriophyllum aquaticum*), lagarosiphon (*Lagarosiphon major*) and hornwort (*Ceratophyllum demersum*), which can compete with native species for space and nutrients;
  - exotic, nitrogen-fixing vegetation, such as gorse, which causes increased nutrient flows;
  - introduced predators and herbivores, such as feral cats, mustelids, hedgehogs (*Erinaceus europaeus*) and rats;
  - modification of hydrological processes (e.g. drainage, damming and diversion, flood control, water abstraction, and power generation);
  - fire; and
  - subdivisions and urban encroachment.
- All of these threats can negatively impact on indigenous biodiversity and the extent of wetland ecosystems.
- Opportunity:** There is a strong opportunity to work towards protecting and restoring or enhancing a representative range of wetlands in the region. This work requires active, integrated management by multiple parties due to the complex, catchment-wide influences that impact on wetlands.



	<p><b>f) Opportunity:</b> The awa in the eastern parts of the region, such as the Waiotahe, Waiaua, Mōtū, Hawai, Haparapara, Waikakariki, Kereu and Raukokore rivers, have catchments that are almost entirely in protected primary ngahere. Therefore, there is a significant opportunity to work with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders towards protecting the entire catchments of each of these awa.</p> <p><b>g) Issue:</b> Significant riparian areas along the awa and roto in the Bay of Plenty region are on public conservation lands and waters. However, the grazing of riparian areas throughout the region reduces the ability for these areas to regenerate and affects the adjacent waterbodies.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The condition of many of these riparian areas could be improved to enhance the quality of water entering those waterbodies by slowing flows and filtering contaminants.</p> <p><b>h) Issue:</b> Freshwater pests in this region include pest plants such as waterweeds and parrot’s feather, pest fishes such as gambusia (<i>Gambusia affinis</i>) and brown bullhead catfish (<i>Ameiurus nebulosus</i>), and the red-eared slider turtle (<i>Trachemys scripta elegans</i>). Rudd (<i>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</i>) are a particular issue at Lake McLaren, while brown bullhead catfish are well established at Lake Rotoiti/Te Roto kite ā Ihenga i ariki ai Kahu and Lake Rotoroa.  <b>Opportunity:</b> All of these pests reduce indigenous biodiversity through predation, competition or damaging habitats and so must be controlled if freshwater health is to be maintained or enhanced.</p> <p><b>i) Issue:</b> The ecological and cultural values of the Te Arawa lakes are being impacted by nutrient enrichment from catchment land-use activities, introduced aquatic plants and pest fishes (e.g. brown bullhead catfish). Introduced salmonids have largely contributed to these declines and have caused the extinction of kōaro in some roto.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department already works closely with the Te Arawa Lakes Trust on pest management in the Te Arawa lakes, and there is an opportunity to continue to build on this positive relationship for further conservation gains.</p> <p><b>j) Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to ensure that the ecological health of relatively pristine lakelets is maintained by periodically monitoring them to determine whether new pest plant or fish populations have established, eradicating any pest species and ensuring there are low levels of formed public access to minimise adverse effects on their relatively pristine nature.</p>
<p><b>Policies</b></p>	<p>9.3.2.1 Prioritise statutory advocacy for the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) implementation of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020<sup>18</sup> (and any future amendments);</li> <li>b) enhancement of water quality and river flows that maintain natural processes;</li> <li>c) protection of priority ecosystem units and threatened and at-risk species; and</li> <li>d) provisions of district and regional plans to address the functioning and protection of freshwater ecosystems.</li> </ul> <p>9.3.2.2 Work with tangata whenua, landowners, the Ministry for Primary Industries, Fish &amp; Game councils, regional councils and territorial authorities, and other agencies, and advocate for the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) protection of freshwater ecosystems, fisheries, fish habitat and fish passage;</li> <li>b) preservation of threatened indigenous freshwater species; and</li> <li>c) maintenance and improvement of habitat connectivity and water quality from the headwaters of waterways to the coast.</li> </ul>

<sup>18</sup> [www.mfe.govt.nz/fresh-water/freshwater-acts-and-regulations/national-policy-statement-freshwater-management](http://www.mfe.govt.nz/fresh-water/freshwater-acts-and-regulations/national-policy-statement-freshwater-management)

9.3.2.3	<p>Work with tangata whenua, regional councils and territorial authorities, private landowners, Fish &amp; Game, statutory agencies, primary industry, and other conservation stakeholders to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) minimise sediment and nutrient inputs into waterways;</li> <li>b) protect hydrological processes, including water levels;</li> <li>c) exclude stock from waterways;</li> <li>d) control pest plants and animals and other aquatic pests;</li> <li>e) support an increase in site-based restoration activities within priority freshwater catchments, including Whirinaki, and in high-priority wetlands; and</li> <li>f) encourage community involvement in freshwater restoration initiatives.</li> </ul>
9.3.2.4	<p>Contribute to the multi-agency management of waterbodies and catchments, with a particular focus on improving water quality.</p>
9.3.2.5	<p>Seek to increase the riparian planting of native species in priority areas both on public conservation lands and waters and on private land, including by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) working with private landowners, regional councils and territorial authorities, and other conservation stakeholders;</li> <li>b) encouraging initiatives for riparian planting; and</li> <li>c) advocating to relevant agencies to retire riparian areas from grazing.</li> </ul>
9.3.2.6	<p>Support the protection of a fully representative range of wetlands in this Place in collaboration with tangata whenua, private landowners, regional councils, territorial authorities and other conservation stakeholders.</p>
9.3.2.7	<p>Continue to undertake maintenance and enhancement activities in wetlands within public conservation lands and waters for the purposes of protecting and restoring their ecosystem values.</p>
9.3.2.8	<p>Seek to maintain the ecological health of lakelets that are surrounded by indigenous ngahere on public conservation lands and waters by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) undertaking periodic monitoring to detect new pest plant and pest fish populations;</li> <li>b) assessing the feasibility of eradicating existing or new pest plant and pest fish populations; and</li> <li>c) not providing formed public walking access to these lakelets.</li> </ul>
9.3.2.9	<p>Continue to undertake, or support others to undertake, regular fauna surveys to improve and build on the current knowledge of freshwater populations.</p>
9.3.2.10	<p>Work with tangata whenua to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River for future generations.</p>

9.3.3 Historic values	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Settlements near awa and roto:</b> Clusters of archaeological sites occur around awa and roto in the Te Mauri o te Wai Place, highlighting the importance of fresh water in the settlement of the region by tangata whenua and early Europeans.</li> <li>• <b>Freshwater as a source of kai:</b> Freshwater fish resources were, and continue to be, extensively used and highly valued by Māori, and historical examples of this exist in this Place – for example, kākahi / freshwater mussel middens have been recorded in the Rotorua area and the archaeological remains of a freshwater fish trap have been found at Waingaehe Stream. The Kaituna River was a renowned tuna/eel fishery, and a tuna/eel channel has been recorded at Minginui.</li> <li>• <b>Traditional importance of awa:</b> The awa in this Place were traditionally used as a means of gaining access to settlement, cultivation and mahinga kai sites, and were also important for communication and trade. The Kaituna and Waihou rivers were important for European settlements and trading activities.</li> <li>• <b>Traditional importance of wetlands:</b> Fishing and tuna/eeling camps, resource gathering sites, and pā were located in and around many of the wetland areas in the Bay of Plenty region. Archaeological excavations at the late-17th-century Te Kohika Pā near Matatā have revealed palisades, houses and a wealth of wooden material preserved in the swamp. The harakeke/flax trade also influenced Māori and European settlement patterns. For example, in the early 19th century, wetlands such as those at Athenree, Katikati, Te Puna, Matakana Island and the Wairoa River were an important source of harakeke/flax; and in the 1850s, harakeke/flax mills were established around the Kaituna and Rangitaiki swamps and a ropeworks operated at Matatā.</li> </ul>
<b>Issues and opportunities</b>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> There is a lack of information about the ecology, history and cultural importance of some awa and roto in this Place.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity to improve interpretation of the ecology, history and cultural importance of awa, roto and wetlands to increase visitor awareness of these values.</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> The historical uses of many awa in the region, including the history of hydroelectricity, are not well known.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The stories of the hydroelectricity industry could be better told.</p>
<b>Policies</b>	See section 3.2.2: Regional policies in Part One.

9.3.4 Recreation values	
<b>Values</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Range of activities available:</b> Recreational activities in and alongside the awa, roto and wetlands in the Te Mauri o te Wai Place are highly valued. These include water-based activities, such as fishing, kayaking, canoeing and rafting, and land-based activities, such as walking near waterways and wildlife viewing.</li> <li>• <b>Wetlands provide recreation opportunities:</b> Wetlands are highly valued for active and passive recreational pursuits, such as game bird hunting, fishing, kayaking, photography and birdwatching. Wetlands are also valued for education, scientific study and their contribution to traditional customary practices. For example, the Lower Kaituna Reserve is highly valued by the local community for game bird hunting, birdwatching and walking.</li> <li>• <b>Trout fishing:</b> Tarauta / rainbow trout and brown trout fishing are popular activities, and numerous awa within this Place have high water quality and easy access. For example, the Rangitaiki River is a popular tarauta/trout fishing destination.</li> <li>• <b>Te Arawa lakes:</b> The Te Arawa lakes in the Rotorua area are a popular location for many recreational uses, such as boating, fishing and water skiing (see section 5: Waiariki Place).</li> <li>• <b>Waikato River:</b> The Waikato River is valued for the many recreational activities that occur along its length, such as boating, fishing and hunting.</li> </ul>



<p><b>Issues and opportunities</b></p>	<p>a) <b>Issue:</b> There can be a lack of understanding of the protocols and restrictions that tangata whenua can have for a waterbody. For example, a rāhui could be placed on a waterbody following a death.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity for enhanced tangata whenua storytelling to inform visitors of the cultural significance of awa and the customary practices, protocols, beliefs and values associated with them.</p> <p>b) <b>Issue:</b> Water quality affects the ability of people to recreate in water and gather kai.  <b>Opportunity:</b> There is an opportunity for the Department to work with others, especially accountable agencies, to improve water quality for recreation and mahinga kai.</p> <p>c) <b>Issue:</b> Public access to waterways is not always available, due in part to the complex administrative regime for their riparian margins.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department has an opportunity to improve public access to wetlands, awa and roto while developing interpretation and new recreation opportunities such as walking tracks, which would not only improve access to recreation but could also increase participation.</p> <p>d) <b>Opportunity:</b> Regional councils and territorial authorities have initiated several cycling projects that could provide cycleway access to and alongside wetlands, awa and roto, which the Department could support.</p> <p>e) <b>Issue:</b> The illegal occupation of riparian areas, such as house encroachments and maimai / hunters' huts, is an issue in the Rotorua area and can impact on conservation values, including public access.  <b>Opportunity:</b> The Department is seeking to address building encroachments, for example at Lake Ōkareka.</p> <p>f) <b>Issue:</b> Unauthorised dog access is occurring at multiple sites in this Place.  <b>Opportunity:</b> Reducing this practice through better signage and enforcement can improve conservation outcomes.</p>
<p><b>Policies</b></p>	<p>9.3.4.1 Work with tangata whenua, regional councils and territorial authorities to improve visitor awareness and understanding of Māori customs, protocols, beliefs and values as they relate to waterbodies.</p> <p>9.3.4.2 Work with private landowners, NZWAC, Fish &amp; Game, regional councils, territorial authorities and other conservation stakeholders to improve public access and interpretation of roto, awa and wetlands by:</p> <p>a) improving access and interpretation at sites the Department manages; and</p> <p>b) formalising workable access agreements over private land to these sites.</p> <p>9.3.4.3 Support the initiatives of others in developing cycle trails in riparian areas, provided these are in locations that would enhance conservation outcomes and not result in adverse ecological effects, including impacts on threatened species.</p> <p>9.3.4.4 Reduce unauthorised activities occurring in riparian areas of public conservation lands and waters, including unauthorised structures and building encroachments.</p>



Te Whaiti Nui a Toi canyon. Neil Hutton Photography

## Milestones for the Te Mauri o te Wai Place

Natural values	Historic values	Recreation values
<p><b>Freshwater mauri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Worked with tangata whenua to co-design models for cultural assessment of the health of up to three waterways in the Bay of Plenty region (year 4).</li> </ol> <p><b>Wetlands are maintained and restored</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Identified priority wetland sites on public conservation lands and waters, and established their maintenance and restoration management goals (year 1).</li> <li>3. Implemented steps to achieve the management goals for 50% of the priority wetland sites on public conservation lands and waters (year 4).</li> <li>4. Implemented steps to achieve the management goals for 80% of the priority wetland sites on public conservation lands and waters (year 8).</li> </ol> <p><b>Enhanced freshwater ecosystems</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Participated in all collaborative freshwater restoration forums in the region (years 1–10).</li> <li>6. Maintained or increased advocacy for freshwater values through regional council and territorial authority planning processes (years 1–10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Riparian habitats are protected</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. Identified priority sites on public conservation lands and waters adjacent to waterways that require fencing to exclude stock (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> <li>8. Developed a plan for fencing priority sites (years 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> <li>9. Undertaken fencing and excluded stock from priority sites (years 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol> <p><b>Maunga to the moana</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. Identified at least three priority catchments for restoration (year 4).</li> <li>11. Undertaken site-based restoration activities at the priority catchments identified in milestone 10 (years 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol>	<p>See section 3.5: Regional milestones in Part One.</p>	<p><b>Unauthorised structures</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>12. Completed an inventory, including ownership, of unauthorised structures on public conservation lands and waters adjacent to awa, roto and wetlands (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> <li>13. Made decisions on the future use and management of unauthorised structures (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> <li>14. Removed or re-purposed unauthorised structures (years 1, 4, 7 &amp; 10).</li> </ol>



Part Three –  
Regional policy  
requirements for the  
Bay of Plenty region





Kotepato Hut, Waioeka Conservation Area. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

## 10. Regional policy requirements

The policies included in this section apply across the whole of the Bay of Plenty region for the purposes of integrated conservation management. Unless enabled by other legislation,<sup>1</sup> various activities on public conservation lands and waters require authorisations, with the most common authorisations being concessions (for a trade, occupation or business) and permits.

**Note: Requirements under legislation, the Conservation General Policy 2005<sup>2</sup> and other tools (such as regulations or bylaws) are not repeated in this CMS.**

### 10.1 General regional policies

The Department aims to provide for a range of activities that are consistent with relevant legislation, Conservation General Policy, and the recreational settings and planned outcomes and policies included in Part Two – Places. All applications for authorisations are assessed against the policies in this section in addition to any activity-specific policies contained in sections 10.2 to 10.15. The policies in this section also apply to the Department when undertaking work on public conservation lands and waters.

<sup>1</sup> Examples include the Electricity Act 1992 and associated regulations and the Cadastral Survey Act 2002.

<sup>2</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy.pdf)

## Policies

- 10.1.1 Give effect to the Treaty of Waitangi principles when making statutory decisions on all authorisations, and determine how each principle is applied on a case-by-case basis, considering the facts and interests at the relevant Place.
- 10.1.2 Manage activities and consider applications for authorisations within:
- a) Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park (see Policy 6.3.1); and
  - b) Moutohorā (Whale Island) Wildlife Management Reserve, Ohope Scenic Reserve and Tauwhare Pa Scenic Reserve (see Policy 8.3.1.1); in accordance with the relevant conservation management plan.
- 10.1.3 Should not grant authorisations where they are inconsistent with the:
- a) Conservation General Policy 2005 or General Policy for National Parks 2005,<sup>3</sup> including any amendments to these policies;
  - b) outcomes, objectives and policies in this CMS;
  - c) purposes for which the lands and waters concerned are held; and
  - d) visitor management zones as shown on Map 3 and described in Appendix 14, except in accordance with Policy 10.4.1 (filming and sporting events).
- 10.1.4 Apply an integrated approach to the management of public conservation lands and waters within the Bay of Plenty region and adjoining regions.
- 10.1.5 Restrict or close access to conservation areas where necessary for reasons of public health or safety or emergency, or to:
- a) protect natural, historic or cultural values;
  - b) control biosecurity risks;
  - c) enable the control or eradication of pests using aerial bait operations;
  - d) allow military exercise operations; or
- 10.1.6 allow tree felling. When making conservation management decisions and considering applications for authorisations, consider:
- a) the Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Act 2019 in terms of climate change emissions reduction targets, emissions budgets, emissions reduction plans and adaptation plans; and
  - b) the predicted effects of climate change, having particular regard to the:
    - i. predicted increase in rainfall intensity, taking account of the most recent national guidance and assuming a minimum increase in the annual mean temperature of 2°C by 2090 (relative to 1990 levels); and
    - ii. predicted increase in sea level, taking into account the most recent national guidance and the minimum sea-level rise projection of 0.5 m by 2090.

<sup>3</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/general-policy-for-national-parks.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/role/policies-and-plans/general-policy-for-national-parks.pdf)

## Policies

- 10.1.7 When undertaking any work or activities, consider whether they are covered by Appendix 2 and, therefore, meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemption from land use consents.
- 10.1.8 Encourage people and businesses undertaking activities on public conservation lands and waters to comply with activity-specific minimum impact codes (care codes), as notified from time to time on the Department's website.
- 10.1.9 Reclassify areas of public conservation lands and waters in accordance with, and as identified in, Appendix 12.
- 10.1.10 Work with LINZ, NZWAC, territorial authorities, the relevant Fish & Game council, adjoining landowners, other agencies and the public to achieve integrated management of legal roads adjoining public conservation lands and waters, where actual or potential activity on or near these roads creates difficulties, by:
- seeking that the public voluntarily manage their use of these roads in a way that is consistent with the management of adjoining public conservation lands and waters;
  - enabling the Department to manage and facilitate recreation on these roads in a way that is consistent with the management of adjoining public conservation lands and waters;
  - seeking active management and facilitation of recreation on these roads by territorial authorities in a way that is consistent with the management of adjoining public conservation lands and waters; or
  - stopping or resuming these roads and adding them to the adjoining public conservation lands and waters.
- 10.1.11 Work cooperatively with FENZ to increase awareness of and reduce fire risks relating to public conservation lands and waters, Ngā Whenua Rāhui kawenata, and Treaty settlement lands, and inform visitors about how to mitigate any risks.

## 10.2 Aircraft

All aircraft, including remotely piloted aircraft (drones), require a concession or authorisation to land on, take off from or hover over public conservation lands and waters, other than for certain activities, such as search and rescue; departmental management purposes; emergency situations; maritime navigational-aid management; land survey work; aircraft operated by the New Zealand Defence Force or the Civil Aviation Authority; or any mining activity authorised under the Crown Minerals Act 1991.

To manage these activities, which are collectively referred to as 'aircraft landings', there are four nationally consistent aircraft access zones in the Bay of Plenty region (see Map 4). These zones reflect the different management methodologies required and the likelihood of granting concessions for aircraft landings as follows:

- **Red Zones** are areas where a concession application to land an aircraft should be declined (with some exceptions).
- **Yellow Zones** are areas where a concession application to land an aircraft should be granted where it meets the nationally consistent limits for this zone.
- **Orange Zones** are areas where there are complex issues to be managed, requiring limits and/or other criteria to guide whether concessions for aircraft landings can be granted.
- **Green Zones** are areas where a concession application to land an aircraft is likely to be granted subject to any relevant outcomes and/or criteria in the policies.



## Policies

- 10.2.1 May require the following conditions in a concession for aircraft landings<sup>4</sup> :
- a) no landings occur near specified tracks, huts or car parks;
  - b) global positioning systems and other technologies are used for monitoring purposes; and
  - c) the operator holds and complies with certification in a noise management scheme that is approved by the Department in specified locations.
- 10.2.2 Should not grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Red Zone, as shown on Map 4, except:
- a) for the construction, operation and/or maintenance of equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems, transmission lines) authorised by the Department;
  - b) for wild animal control activities<sup>5</sup> in accordance with Policy 10.15.1 (Wild and game animals); or
  - c) to support research, monitoring or the collection of material authorised by the Department.
- 10.2.3 Should grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Yellow Zone, as shown on Map 4, only in accordance with:
- a) Policy 10.2.6 or 10.2.7; or
  - b) limits of:
    - i. for commercial purposes, two landings per concessionaire per day at any one site (defined as any landing site within a 1-km radius of the initial landing site) and a maximum of 20 landings per site per concessionaire per year; or
    - ii. for recreational purposes, two landings per aircraft per day at any one site (defined as any landing site within a 1-km radius of the initial landing site) and a maximum of 20 landings per aircraft per site per year.
- 10.2.4 Should grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Green Zone, as shown on Map 4, including in accordance with Policy 10.2.6 or 10.2.7.
- 10.2.5 Should grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Orange Zone, as shown on Map 4, only in accordance with:
- a) Policy 10.2.6 or 10.2.7; or
  - b) the policies set out in Table 10.2.1.
- 10.2.6 May grant concessions for aircraft landings associated with commercial filming and photography or sporting and other competitive events where these do not meet the limits and/or criteria in the Yellow, Green and Orange Zones and mechanisms are used to address any adverse effects, including:
- a) the use of a remotely piloted aircraft; and
  - b) low-level flying (i.e. hovering) but no actual landing on the ground.

---

<sup>4</sup> This includes landing, taking off and hovering.

<sup>5</sup> These activities assist the Department in effectively controlling (via concerted action) wild animals. Public conservation lands and waters are available for commercial hunting unless consideration of the statutory provisions establishes reasons for restrictions or closures (see Conservation General Policy 4.2 (e) and (f)).

<b>Policies</b>	
10.2.7	May grant concessions for aircraft landings where these do not meet the limits and/or criteria in the Yellow, Green and Orange Zones for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the construction, operation and/or maintenance of equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems, transmission lines) authorised by the Department; or</li> <li>b) wild animal control activities in accordance with Policy 10.15.1 (Wild and game animals).</li> </ul>
10.2.8	May grant concessions for aircraft landings on moveable marginal strips with no identified aircraft access zone shown on Map 4 where the moveable marginal strip: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) adjoins or is adjacent to other public conservation lands and waters with an aircraft access zone, in which case apply Policy 10.2.1 and the relevant aircraft policies for that aircraft access zone; or</li> <li>b) does not adjoin or is not adjacent to other public conservation lands and waters, in which case apply Policy 10.2.1 and, where relevant, Policy 10.2.6 or 10.2.7.</li> </ul>
10.2.9	Advocate to aviation controllers and aircraft operators to manage flight paths to avoid adverse effects on public conservation lands and waters.
10.2.10	Work with aircraft operators overflying public conservation lands and waters to establish voluntary codes of conduct that reflect the requirements of visitor management zones for those lands and waters.

**Table 10.2.1: Conservation unit-specific policies for aircraft landings in the Orange Zone (see Policy 10.2.5)**

<b>Place</b>	<b>Conservation unit (generally listed north to south)</b>	<b>Policy</b>
<b>Kaimai Mamaku Place</b>	Waikino (Strawbridge) Conservation Area	i. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Waikino (Strawbridge) Conservation Area only in accordance with the criteria that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) there are no more than 4 landings per day per concessionaire and a maximum of 50 landings per year per concessionaire;</li> <li>b) adverse effects on ecological and cultural values are avoided; and</li> <li>c) adverse effects on the visitor experience found in the outcomes and policies for the Kaimai Mamaku Place are avoided.</li> </ul>
	Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	ii. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park only within 20 m of designated landing zones at: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Daly’s Clearing Hut;</li> <li>b) Kauritatahi Hut;</li> <li>c) Hurunui Hut;</li> <li>d) Mangamuka Hut;</li> </ul>

Place	Conservation unit (generally listed north to south)	Policy
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e) Motutapere Hut;</li> <li>f) Te Rereatukahia Hut;</li> <li>g) Te Whare Okoiki Hut; and</li> <li>h) Waitawheta Hut;</li> </ul> <p>and in accordance with the criteria that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I. there are no more than 4 landings per day per concessionaire and a maximum of 50 landings per year per concessionaire;</li> <li>II. adverse effects on ecological and cultural values are avoided; and</li> <li>III. adverse effects on the visitor experience found in the outcomes and policies for the Kaimai Mamaku Place are avoided.</li> </ul>
<b>Waiariki Place</b>	Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>iii. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve only within 20 m of the designated landing zones at Te Tapahoro as identified in Map 7.2: Aircraft access zones – Tarawera Lakes and in accordance with the criteria that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) there are no more than 4 landings per day per concessionaire and a maximum of 50 landings per year per concessionaire;</li> <li>b) adverse effects on ecological and cultural values are avoided; and</li> <li>c) adverse effects on the visitor experience found in the outcomes and policies for the Waiariki Place are avoided.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>iv. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve only in accordance with the criteria that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) there are no more than 4 landings per day per concessionaire and a maximum of 50 landings per year per concessionaire;</li> <li>b) adverse effects on ecological and cultural values are avoided; and</li> <li>c) adverse effects on the visitor experience found in the outcomes and policies for the Waiariki Place are avoided.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



Place	Conservation unit (generally listed north to south)	Policy
	Rotomahana Conservation Area	<p>v. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Rotomahana Conservation Area only within 20 m of the designated landing zone at Te Rātā Bay as identified in Map 7.2: Aircraft access zones – Tarawera Lakes and in accordance with the criteria that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) there are no more than 4 landings per day per concessionaire and a maximum of 50 landings per year per concessionaire;</li> <li>b) adverse effects on ecological and cultural values are avoided; and</li> <li>c) adverse effects on the visitor experience found in the outcomes and policies for the Waiariki Place are avoided.</li> </ul>
	Te Kopia Scenic Reserve	<p>vi. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Te Kopia Scenic Reserve only in accordance with the criteria that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) there are no more than 4 landings per day per concessionaire and a maximum of 50 landings per year per concessionaire;</li> <li>b) adverse effects on ecological and cultural values are avoided; and</li> <li>c) adverse effects on the visitor experience found in the outcomes and policies for the Waiariki Place are avoided.</li> </ul>
<b>Whirinaki Surrounds Place</b>	Waipunga Forest	<p>vii. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings and take-offs within the Waipunga Forest only within 20m of designated landing zones at:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Lower Matakuhia Hut;</li> <li>b) Upper Matakuhia Hut; and</li> <li>c) the zones identified in Map 7.1: Aircraft Access Zones – Waipunga Forest;</li> </ul> <p>and in accordance with the criteria that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I. there are no more than 4 landings per day per concessionaire and a maximum of 50 landings per year per concessionaire;</li> <li>II. adverse effects on ecological and cultural values are avoided; and</li> <li>III. adverse effects on the visitor experience found in the outcomes and policies for the Whirinaki Surrounds Place are avoided.</li> </ul>

## 10.3 Beehives

A concession is required to place beehives on public conservation lands and waters. Bees are known to have a range of potential effects on sensitive ecosystems.

However, knowledge of the extent of these effects is developing and will be further improved through monitoring.

### Policies

- 10.3.1 May grant concessions for the placement of beehives in the Bay of Plenty region subject to the proposed location being suitable by:
- a) avoiding conflicts with other users, including requiring a buffer between beehive sites and facilities and structures used by departmental staff and the public;
  - b) placing beehives only in areas of natural clearance where vegetation clearance is not required; and
  - c) avoiding/remedying/mitigating any adverse effects on indigenous species.

## 10.4 Commercial filming and photography, and sporting and other competitive events

Concessions are required for any filming and photography (filming activity) undertaken for gain or reward on public conservation lands and waters. Filming activities can include crew, film equipment, vehicles, aircraft, animals, sets and special effects. The Conservation General Policy 2005 states that filming should be subject to the same assessment procedures and conditions as other users and that particular care should be taken to ensure that filming does not adversely affect the values of sites of significance, including those of significance to tangata whenua.

Sporting and other competitive events, including endurance races, multi-sport or orienteering events, require a concession. These events are part of a spectrum of recreation opportunities and may be suited to particular areas within the Bay of Plenty region.

### Policies

#### General

- 10.4.1 May grant authorisations for commercial filming and photography, or sporting and other competitive events where:
- a) these are not in accordance with Policies 10.2.3–10.2.5 (Aircraft) or the visitor management zones as shown on Map 3 and described in Appendix 14; and
  - b) mechanisms are used to address any adverse effects, including:
    - i. informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the event or activity is to occur or is occurring;
    - ii. avoiding peak visitor times; and
    - iii. avoiding or protecting sites with high natural, historic or cultural values.

Policies	
<b>Commercial filming and photography</b>	10.4.2 Should grant concessions for commercial filming and photography on public conservation lands and waters located outside national parks only where any conflicts between recreation/tourism uses and filming activity are avoided (e.g. separated in space and time), remedied or mitigated.
	10.4.3 10.4.3 Should require compliance with the latest version of the Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands <sup>6</sup> in all concessions for filming activities.
<b>Sporting and other competitive events</b>	10.4.4 May grant authorisations for organised sporting or other competitive events where adequate public notification of the event can occur before the event.
	10.4.5 May waive or reduce the requirement for public notification in circumstances where details of a sporting or other competitive event are not disclosed to participants in advance if satisfied that the adverse effects will be minimal and following consultation with the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board on a confidential basis.
	10.4.6 May require the authorisation holder to ensure that participants in a sporting or other competitive event comply with a code of conduct developed with the authorisation holder.
	10.4.7 In all authorisations for sporting and other competitive events, should require: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) fire safety contingencies in high-fire-risk areas, including events being cancelled at short notice; and</li> <li>b) participants to be provided with information on conservation values, including cultural values in consultation with tangata whenua, and opportunities for involvement in conservation programmes.</li> </ul>

## 10.5 Fishing and game bird hunting

The Department is responsible for protecting and preserving freshwater fisheries (including tuna/eel fisheries) and their habitats within public conservation lands and waters. The Ministry for Primary Industries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996, the Fisheries (Commercial Fishing) Regulations 2001 and other associated regulations. Commercial eel fishers require a concession to access public conservation lands and waters, and concessions can be limited within areas administered by the Department to protect natural resources, including tuna/eels. The recreational and commercial take of indigenous fauna such as tuna/eels and whitebait from reserves administered under the Reserves Act 1977 is also subject to

section 50(1) of that Act and section 26ZHB (Prohibitions and restrictions on taking of indigenous freshwater fish) of the Conservation Act 1987.

Regional Fish & Game councils manage sports fishes, fishing and game bird hunting in the Bay of Plenty region, and the Department works with these councils to manage sports fishes and fishing on public conservation lands and waters, including preventing the introduction of salmonid fishes to waters where they are not legally present in order to protect habitat values.

<sup>6</sup> Film New Zealand; Department of Conservation 2009: Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands. Department of Conservation and Film New Zealand. 10 p. [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/concessions-and-permits/concessions/code-of-practice-filming-on-public-conservation-lands.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/concessions-and-permits/concessions/code-of-practice-filming-on-public-conservation-lands.pdf)



Policies	
<b>Commercial eeling</b>	<p>10.5.1 Should not grant concessions for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) commercial eeling on public conservation lands and waters; or</li> <li>b) access over public conservation lands and waters where this is required to reach a proposed commercial eeling site; to ensure the preservation of tuna/eel species.</li> </ul> <p>10.5.2 Work with tangata whenua, the Ministry for Primary Industries, commercial eelers and the community to protect indigenous tuna/eel populations and their habitats on and off public conservation lands and waters.</p>
<b>Recreational whitebaiting and eeling</b>	<p>10.5.3 Should only grant authorisations for recreational whitebaiting and eeling where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the effects of the fishing are understood; and</li> <li>b) adverse effects on indigenous species or ecosystems within those waters are avoided, remedied or mitigated.</li> </ul>
<b>Sports fishing and game bird hunting</b>	<p>10.5.4 Should not approve the introduction of salmonid fishes to waters where they are not already present.</p> <p>10.5.5 Work with the Bay of Plenty Fish &amp; Game councils and others:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) to preserve indigenous freshwater fisheries;</li> <li>b) to protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats that are at risk of loss or decline; and</li> <li>c) in their management of sports fishing and game bird hunting on public conservation lands and waters.</li> </ul>

## 10.6 Fixed anchors

Fixed anchors are placed into rock (or bolted) for rope-access activities such as rock climbing, abseiling, caving and canyoning. These anchor points are usually drilled or glued in place and remain permanently in the rock face.

The Department works with the New Zealand Alpine Club (NZAC), a representative advocate for climbers, and liaises with other recreation groups on these issues. NZAC has developed a Rock Climbing Access Framework (2017), Landowner Guidelines (2017), Bolting Philosophy and Standards (for Route Developers) (2017), and Code

of Conduct for Rock Climbers (2017)<sup>7</sup> to help ensure safe and consistent bolting and environmental responsibility. The natural environment can have inherent risks, and people are responsible for making their own decisions about the risks they are prepared to take on public conservation lands and water. The use of fixed anchors has inherent risks to users that are known and accepted by those users.

<sup>7</sup> For links to these publications, visit <https://alpineclub.org.nz/rock-climbing/access-framework/>

## Policies

- 10.6.1 Work with NZAC and other recreation groups to identify unauthorised fixed anchors in the Bay of Plenty region and remove any that are unsafe.
- 10.6.2 Work with NZAC and other recreation groups to identify areas that are suitable for the placement of fixed anchors in the Bay of Plenty region through:
- avoiding adverse effects on priority ecosystem units, threatened or at-risk species, and significant geological features, landforms and landscapes;
  - avoiding adverse effects on sites of significance to tangata whenua; and
  - addressing public safety issues.
- 10.6.3 May authorise the placement of fixed anchors in the Bay of Plenty region where:
- consultation with NZAC, other recreation groups, tangata whenua and other stakeholders has been undertaken; and
  - the activity is in accordance with NZAC's Rock Climbing Access Framework (2017), Landowner Guidelines (2017), Bolting Philosophy and Standards (for Route Developers) (2017), Code of Conduct for Rock Climbers (2017), and any other updated guidance.
- 10.6.4 Encourage and support NZAC to take the lead on fixed anchor management:
- in accordance with NZAC's Rock Climbing Access Framework (2017), Landowner Guidelines (2017), Bolting Philosophy and Standards (for Route Developers) (2017), Code of Conduct for Rock Climbers (2017), and any other updated guidance; and
  - in consultation with the Department and the local climbing community.

## 10.7 Grazing and farming

Grazing concessions, or management agreements for exotic vegetation control, must be consistent with Policy 11.2 of the Conservation General Policy 2005 in addition to

Policy 10.7.1 below.

## Policies

- 10.7.1 Should authorise grazing and farming on public conservation lands and waters only where:
- the land is suitable for grazing and farming;
  - the catchment is not sensitive to increased sediments or nutrients;
  - there is no increased flooding risk;
  - livestock are kept out of waterways; and
  - waterway protection measures included in the Bay of Plenty Regional Natural Resources Plan<sup>8</sup> and any other updated plan and national regulations are complied with.

<sup>8</sup> Bay of Plenty Regional Council 2008: Bay of Plenty Regional Natural Resources Plan. Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Whakatāne. 41 p. [atlas.boprc.govt.nz/api/v1/edms/document/A3490282/content](https://atlas.boprc.govt.nz/api/v1/edms/document/A3490282/content)

## 10.8 Marine mammal viewing

Marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992, and the commercial viewing of marine mammals must be authorised by the Director-General of Conservation.

In 2010, a moratorium<sup>9</sup> was placed on the issuing of new permits for seal, dolphin and whale watching in the Bay of Plenty region. This moratorium has been amended three times since then to extend the period during which no new permits will be granted to allow relevant research on dolphins and the impacts of marine mammal watching to be completed. This research has focused on the effects of commercial tourism activities on

common dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*) and bottlenose dolphins in the Bay of Plenty, as well as dolphin site fidelity and potential cumulative effects. This research has provided the Department with independent scientific data to develop effective management tools and practices for the protection, management and conservation of marine mammals within the region.

Based on this research, the Department has decided to amend the existing moratorium on issuing marine mammal viewing permits in the Bay of Plenty by extending it until 30 September 2029.

### Policies

- 10.8.1 Seek to amend or establish a new moratorium, pursuant to Section 15 of the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992, on issuing marine mammal viewing permits in the Bay of Plenty by 30 September 2029.
- 10.8.2 Encourage passive, land-based marine mammal viewing operations in the first instance.
- 10.8.3 Support research into the effects of human interactions with marine mammals.

## 10.9 Mining

The prospecting, exploration and mining of Crown-owned mineral deposits is managed by the Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment in accordance with the Crown Minerals Act 1991. Under that Act, the Minister of Conservation's role is limited

to approving access arrangements over public conservation lands and waters. Access arrangements cannot be granted for land included in Schedule 4 of the Act (which includes all national parks, wilderness areas, nature reserves, scientific reserves and marine reserves) except in very limited circumstances, as set out in the Act.

### Policies

- 10.9.1 Should not enter into access arrangements where there is the potential to adversely affect the threatened or at-risk species identified in Appendix 6 or the priority historic, cultural, natural or recreation sites identified in Appendices 5, 9, 10 and 11 of this CMS.
- 10.9.2 May include specific conditions (which may be by way of a bond) in access arrangements to require:
  - a) the public conservation lands and waters to be restored to as natural a condition as possible; or
  - b) off-site mitigation.

<sup>9</sup> [gazette.govt.nz/notice/id/2010-go8186](http://gazette.govt.nz/notice/id/2010-go8186)



## 10.10 Private accommodation

Existing structures on public conservation lands and waters include some private accommodation and related facilities that are not available for use by the general public. Under the Conservation General Policy 2005, the use of private accommodation

and related facilities, including encampments, solely for private purposes is to be phased out, except where specifically provided for or allowed in legislation.

Policies	
10.10.1	Should not authorise new private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters.
10.10.2	Should phase out all existing private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters that are not otherwise authorised or allowed in legislation <sup>10</sup> by either: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) phasing in public use of the building(s); or</li> <li>b) removing the building(s), unless retained by the Department.</li> </ol>
10.10.3	Should consult the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board and the concession applicant when assessing a concession application for existing private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, to determine whether a concession may be granted and, if so and where relevant, which of the two phase-out methods (i.e. Policy 10.10.2a or 10.10.2b) should be applied.
10.10.4	Should specify the following conditions if accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, are authorised in accordance with Policy 10.10.2: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the style and character of all buildings are to remain essentially unmodified;</li> <li>b) the floor area and footprint of all buildings are not to increase beyond existing levels at the time of granting the authorisation;</li> <li>c) all buildings must comply with the Building Act 2004, the Building Code, and regional council and territorial authority requirements;</li> <li>d) transfer/assignment of the authorisation to another party will not be consented to;</li> <li>e) the concessionaire must indemnify the Department against any loss resulting from the use of the buildings or the cost of removing the buildings; and</li> <li>f) public liability implications, including adequate insurance/bonds to cover the indemnity, are satisfied.</li> </ol>
10.10.5	Should, where an existing authorisation contains a right of renewal, grant (subject to the terms of the existing authorisation) the renewal <sup>11</sup> of authorisations for private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters only to the existing authorisation holder <sup>12</sup> if: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the right of renewal is exercised by the authorisation holder before the existing authorisation expires; and</li> <li>b) the person holding the authorisation has complied with all of the terms and conditions of the authorisation.</li> </ol>

<sup>10</sup> Such as section 7(2) of the Conservation Amendment Act 1996 or section 11(4) of the Reserves Amendment Act 1996.

<sup>11</sup> Where the existing/previous authorisation does not contain a right of renewal and is due to expire (or has expired) and the authorisation holder applies for a new concession, the application should be considered against the other policies in this section and the relevant general policy.

<sup>12</sup> That is, should not grant transfers/assignments to other parties.

## Policies

- 10.10.6 Should not authorise the substantial repair or replacement of private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, if:
- a) a building falls into substantial disrepair and needs work requiring a building consent under the Building Act 2004<sup>13</sup>; or
  - b) a building is destroyed or so extensively damaged by an event (e.g. fire, flood) that it is untenable.

## 10.11 Sand and shingle extraction

Sand, shingle and gravel extraction from riverbeds or coastal areas is managed and allocated by regional councils under the Resource Management Act 1991. However,

any person wanting to undertake this activity on public conservation lands and waters also requires authorisation from the Department.

## Policies

- 10.11.1 Should authorise the removal of sand, shingle or other natural material from public conservation lands and waters only where adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.
- 10.11.2 May, in authorisations for the extraction of sand, shingle or other natural materials, seek compensation to assist in indigenous ecosystem management.
- 10.11.3 Work with regional authorities to achieve integrated management of the extraction of sand, shingle and other natural materials on and off public conservation lands and waters.

## 10.12 Structures, utilities and facilities

Most structures on public conservation lands and waters have a purpose related to:

- the Department's operational requirements;
- utilities that provide essential public services, such as telecommunications; energy generation and transmission; sewerage; water supply and flood control; oil and gas transmission; roads and airstrips; hydrological and weather stations; and seismic monitoring; or
- facilities, such as huts and tracks, to enable the public's appreciation and enjoyment of the intrinsic natural, historic and cultural values consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held.

## Policies

- 10.12.1 May authorise the erection or retention of structures, utilities and facilities or the adaptive reuse of existing structures, utilities and facilities on public conservation lands and waters where the activity promotes or enhances the retention of a historic structure, utility or facility.

<sup>13</sup> Minor repair and maintenance using comparable materials does not generally require building consent under this Act.

## 10.13 Vehicles and other means of transport

A ‘vehicle’ includes both powered land vehicles, such as cars, four-wheel drives, motorcycles and electric power-assisted pedal cycles (e-bikes) and non-powered vehicles, such as mountain bikes. Vehicles are only allowed on public conservation lands and waters within the Bay of Plenty region in locations identified in this CMS, except where necessary for departmental management purposes.

Vehicle use can adversely affect the conservation and recreation values identified in section 3: National and regional objectives, policies and milestones, Part Two – Places, and the associated appendices. The locations that are considered suitable for vehicle

use were identified having regard to the protection of these values. However, in some circumstances, additional restrictions and conditions are necessary.

Most waterbodies within the Bay of Plenty region that can be used for watercraft are not part of public conservation lands and waters, and watercraft control by the Department is limited to within wildlife refuges. Outside these areas, other watercraft controls exist through navigation and safety bylaws and regional council and territorial authority surface water activity rules.

Policies	
<b>General</b>	<p>10.13.1 Liaise with vehicle and watercraft users to identify opportunities to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) be involved in conservation programmes; and</li> <li>b) maintain the roads, tracks, routes or waterways they are permitted to use.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.2 Review vehicle and watercraft use at sites where monitoring shows adverse effects are occurring in consultation with relevant user groups and the community.</p> <p>10.13.3 Identify the roads, tracks and routes listed in Table 10.13.1 on the Department’s website, on signs and in other information to clarify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) where people are permitted to take vehicles and watercraft onto public conservation lands and waters; and</li> <li>b) what conditions apply to the taking of such vehicles and watercraft, including the requirement to remain on the track or road formation at all times at sites where vehicles are restricted to identified tracks or roads.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.4 Undertake consultation with user groups, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs, other interested parties and the public when considering new opportunities for the use of vehicles and watercraft on public conservation lands and waters.</p> <p>10.13.5 Apply a range of criteria when considering new opportunities for the use of vehicles (other than in accordance with Policies 10.13.10–10.13.12) and watercraft on public conservation lands and waters, including whether:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) follow the statutory amendment or review process;</li> <li>b) the use is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, track or site is, or is proposed to be, located;</li> <li>c) the use is consistent with the visitor management zones shown on Map 3 and described in Appendix 14;</li> <li>d) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the road, track or site and on natural, historic or cultural values can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;</li> </ul>



<b>Policies</b>	
<b>General</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects and conflicts) on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;</li> <li>f) measures such as trial periods, restricted seasons, daylight use only, limits on numbers and one-way flow can be applied, if necessary;</li> <li>g) facilities, including those associated with overnight use, can be provided, if necessary;</li> <li>h) risks of fire and biosecurity (including the introduction or spread of pest plants and pathogens) can be avoided or otherwise carefully managed; and</li> <li>i) the ongoing management implications of providing vehicle and watercraft (e.g. in terms of ongoing maintenance costs) are taken into account.</li> </ul>
<b>Motor vehicles</b>	<p>10.13.6 Should allow motor vehicles on public conservation lands and waters only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) on the named roads identified in Table 10.13.1; or</li> <li>b) for authorised farming operations, restoration activities, and the construction, operation and/or maintenance of authorised utilities.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.7 May restrict motorised vehicle access at any time when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) there is a health and safety risk;</li> <li>b) there is a fire risk;</li> <li>c) adverse effects are evident or likely;</li> <li>d) priorities change for the provision of the road; or</li> <li>e) damage to the structure of the road is evident or likely.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.8 Work with regional councils and territorial authorities, the New Zealand Police, and other relevant agencies to manage motor vehicle use on beaches, lake shores and riverbeds to protect conservation values.</p>
<b>Mountain biking and e-biking (cycling)</b>	<p>10.13.9 Allow independent mountain biking and e-biking (cycling), and may allow guided cycling or cycling events, only on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the tracks, trails and named roads or other areas identified in Table 10.13.1; and</li> <li>b) any tracks, trails and named roads or other areas identified in Table 10.13.2 subject to Policy 10.13.11.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.10 When considering new opportunities not identified in Policy 10.13.9 for mountain biking and e-biking (cycling) on public conservation lands and waters during the term of this CMS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) follow the statutory amendment or review process;</li> <li>b) undertake consultation with cycling clubs, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs, other interested parties and the public;</li> </ul>

<b>Policies</b>	
<b>Mountain biking and e-biking (cycling)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c) assess the extent to which adverse effects (including cumulative effects) on conservation values and other recreational users can be avoided, remedied or mitigated; and</li> <li>d) apply Policy 3.3.2.1.</li> </ul>
<b>Mountain biking and e-biking (cycling)</b>	<p>10.13.11 When considering whether to develop or allow a new cycle track or trail as identified in Table 10.13.2 in accordance with Policy 3.3.2.1, assess whether:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) there is potential for adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects);</li> <li>b) specialist reports are required to assess the adverse effects of the cycle track or trail, including but not limited to:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. ecological values;</li> <li>ii. archaeological and heritage values;</li> <li>iii. landscape values; and</li> <li>iv. risks and natural hazards;</li> </ul> </li> <li>c) public notification is required;</li> <li>d) engagement with tangata whenua has been carried out to inform the assessment of the proposed cycle track or trail;</li> <li>e) consultation with relevant conservation boards is required;</li> <li>f) consultation with interest groups, local authorities and adjacent landowners is required; and</li> <li>g) adequate funding for the construction and ongoing maintenance of the proposed track or trail can be demonstrated.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.12 Construct and maintain, and may grant authorisations to construct and maintain, new cycle tracks or trails, subject to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Policy 10.13.11 and whether any identified adverse effects or concerns raised regarding the construction and maintenance can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;</li> <li>b) implementing mechanisms to manage the adverse effects or concerns raised, including compliance with the Department’s cycle trail standards and e-bike use guidance; and</li> <li>c) any authorisations containing conditions that are necessary to manage any identified adverse effects or concerns raised.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.13 Implement any controls necessary to manage the use of mountain bikes and e-bikes on any cycle tracks and trails on public conservation lands and waters, including but not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) trial periods;</li> <li>b) annual and seasonal restrictions;</li> </ul>

Policies	
<b>Mountain biking and e-biking (cycling)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c) daily time restrictions, such as daylight use only;</li> <li>d) limits on numbers; and</li> <li>e) a requirement for one-way flow.</li> </ul> <p>10.13.14 Update signage and the Department's website, as required, to inform the public where cycles are allowed.</p> <p>10.13.15 Monitor the effects of cycling use on natural, historic or cultural values and on other recreational users.</p> <p>10.13.16 Review cycling use on tracks or at sites where monitoring shows unacceptable adverse effects may be occurring.</p>
<b>Watercraft</b>	<p>10.13.17 Should allow motorised watercraft use only in the Huntress Creek Conservation Area.</p> <p>10.13.18 May restrict access for watercraft across public conservation lands and waters where adverse effects associated with the watercraft use may impact on these lands and waters or wildlife.</p> <p>10.13.19 Work with regional councils and territorial authorities to manage watercraft use on waters adjacent to public conservation lands and waters in an integrated manner that is consistent with this CMS.</p>

**Table 10.13.1: Motor vehicle, electric power-assisted pedal cycle and mountain bike access**

Place	Conservation unit	Track/road	Motorised vehicles?	E-bikes?	Mountain biking?	Criteria
<b>Kaimai Mamaku Place</b>	Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	Whakamarama Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Karangahake Walkway Conservation Area	Karangahake Tunnel – Owcharoa Falls track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Karangahake Walkway Conservation Area	Owcharoa / Victoria Battery / Waikino walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Mamaku Scenic Reserve	King Hill track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Karangahake Walkway Conservation Area	Karangahake Gorge Tunnel Loop walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Karangahake Scenic Reserve	Karangahake Gorge Tunnel Loop Walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Karangahake Walkway Tunnel Western Portal Scenic Reserve	Karangahake Gorge Tunnel Loop Walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	Karangahake Gorge Tunnel Loop Walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	Ngatuhua Short Loop Walk	No	Yes	Yes	



Place	Conservation unit	Track/road	Motorised vehicles?	E-bikes?	Mountain biking?	Criteria
<b>Kaimai Mamaku Place</b>	Karangahake Walkway Conservation Area	Victoria Battery walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Goldfields Railway Conservation Area	Victoria Battery Walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Ohinemuri River Marginal Strip, Karangahake	Karangahake Gorge Tunnel Loop Walk	No	Yes	Yes	
	Waitawheta–Ohinemuri River Marginal Strip	Karangahake Gorge Tunnel Loop Walk	No	Yes	Yes	
<b>Eastern Catchments Place</b>	Urutawa Conservation Area	Pakihi Track – Motu Road to Pakihi Hut	No	Yes	Yes	
	Pakihi Stream Marginal Strip	Pakihi Track – Pakihi Hut to Pakihi Road end	No	Yes	Yes	
	Pakihi Stream Conservation Area	Pakihi Track – Pakihi Hut to Pakihi Road end	No	Yes	Yes	
	Urutawa Conservation Area	Pakihi Track – Pakihi Hut to Pakihi Road end	No	Yes	Yes	
	Urutawa Conservation Area	Te Waiti Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
<b>Whirinaki Surrounds Place</b>	Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Park	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	Managed in accordance with the Whirinaki Te Pua-a-Tāne Conservation Management Plan. <sup>14</sup>
	Waipunga River Marginal Strip	Waipunga Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Kokomoka Forest	Waipunga Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Kokomoka Forest	Kokomoka Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	

<sup>14</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/policies-and-plans/conservation-management/whirinaki-te-pua-a-tane-cmp.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/about-doc/policies-and-plans/conservation-management/whirinaki-te-pua-a-tane-cmp.pdf)

Place	Conservation unit	Track/road	Motorised vehicles?	E-bikes?	Mountain biking?	Criteria
<b>Coastal and Marine Place</b>	Tirohanga Dunes Conservation Area	Tirohanga mountain bike track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Kutarere Recreation Reserve	Kutarere Wharf Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Ōhiwa Harbour Marginal Strip	Kutarere Wharf Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Okorero–Thornton Lagoon Wildlife Management Reserve (Part)	Thornton Access Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
<b>Waiariki Place</b>	Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve	Rainbow Mountain – Te Tihi O Ruru track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve	Rainbow Mountain – Te Ara Ahi track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve	Rainbow Mountain – Crater Lakes Track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve	Rainbow Mountain – Te Ranga track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve	Rainbow Mountain Summit Road	Yes	No	No	
	Maunga Kākaramea / Rainbow Mountain Scenic Reserve	Kerosene Creek track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Whakarewarewa State Forest Park	Hatupatu Track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Lake Okareka Scenic Reserve	Western Okataina Walkway – Millar Road – trig junction	No	Yes	Yes	
	Whakarewarewa State Forest Park	Kataore track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Whakarewarewa State Forest Park	Tangaroamihi mountain bike track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Lake Tikitapu Scenic Reserve	Tangaroamihi Feeder Track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Lake Tikitapu Scenic Reserve	Okaraka Tikitapu Link Track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Whakarewarewa State Forest Park	Tangaroamihi track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Whakarewarewa State Forest Park	Tuhoto Ariki track	No	Yes	Yes	
Tikitapu Conservation Area	Tuhoto Ariki Track	No	Yes	Yes		

Place	Conservation unit	Track/road	Motorised vehicles?	E-bikes?	Mountain biking?	Criteria
Waiariki Place	Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve	Manawahe Beach Access Road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Crater Block Crown Land	Mount Tarawera access road	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Roydon Downs Scenic Reserve	Ridge Road to Lichenstein Road	No	Yes	Yes	
	Ohinemuri River Marginal Strip, Owharoa	Karangahake Tunnel – Owharoa Falls track	No	Yes	Yes	
	Old State Mill Road Conservation Area	King Hill Track	No	Yes	Yes	

Table 10.13.2: Mountain bike access subject to investigation (see Policy 10.13.11).

Place	Conservation unit	Track/road
Eastern Catchments Place	Waioeka Gorge Scenic Reserve	Tauranga Track
	Marawaiwai Scenic Reserve	Marawaiwai Track
Te Mauri o te Wai Place	Ngamuwahine River Marginal Strip	Leyland O'Brien Tramway Track
Kaimai Mamaku Place	Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	Leyland O'Brien Tramway Track
	Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve	Rotoma Bridle Track
	Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	Whakamarama Road and the informal four-wheel-drive tracks / milling tramlines to the southeast of the Blade car park and the Leyland O'Brien Tramline Track.
Coastal and Marine Place	Matata Wildlife Refuge Reserve	Matata Lagoon Track
	Lower Kaituna Wildlife Management Reserve	Kaituna Wetland Track
	Pukehina Beach Marginal Strip (estuarine side)	Pukehina peninsula
	Pukehina Beach Marginal Strip	Pukehina peninsula
	Pongakawa Canal Marginal Strip	Pukehina peninsula
Waiariki Place	Lake Rotoiti Scenic Reserve	Hinehopu (Hongi's) Track
	Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve	Rotoma Bridle Track
	Mount Ngongotaha Scenic Reserve	Additional to the Mt Ngongotaha Jubilee Track
	Lake Tikitapu Scenic Reserve	Eastern side of Tarawera Road and Okareka Loop Road
	Roydon Downs Scenic Reserve	Connecting Ridge Road to Lichenstein Road
	Lake Tarawera Scenic Reserve and Tarawera River Marginal Strip	Kawerau to the Lake Tarawera outlet
	Parimahana Scenic Reserve	n/a
	Mokaihaha Ecological Area	n/a



## 10.14 Animals

(See also sections 10.5: Fishing and game bird hunting, 10.7: Grazing and farming, and 10.15: Wild and game animals.)

Animals (excluding dogs) cannot be taken onto public conservation lands and waters unless this is consistent with legislation and provided for in a CMS or conservation management plan.

Taking a dog onto public conservation lands and waters requires a permit, except in some limited circumstances (refer to Policies 10.14.6, 10.14.7 and 10.14.8 and Table 4.16.4). The Department works with dog owners and others to encourage dog use and behaviours that protect conservation values and reduce the potential for dogs to adversely affect the enjoyment of other visitors. Therefore, these permits may contain conditions to protect conservation values.

Policies	
<b>Dogs</b>	<p>10.14.1 Should allow dogs to be taken onto public conservation lands and waters within the Bay of Plenty region without a permit only on the formed roads, tracks and sites identified in Table 10.14.1.</p> <p>10.14.2 Should allow dogs to be taken onto public conservation lands and waters within the Bay of Plenty region without a permit where the person taking the dog is undertaking official activities in the capacity of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) a Police employee;</li> <li>b) a warranted officer;</li> <li>c) an officer or employee of the Department;</li> <li>d) a Customs officer; or</li> <li>e) a search and rescue person.</li> </ul> <p>10.14.3 Should allow disability assist dogs to be taken onto public conservation lands and waters without a permit provided:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the person the dog is accompanying, including a person genuinely engaged in the dog's training, keeps the dog under control at all times; and</li> <li>b) the dog is currently certified with a relevant Disability Assist Dog organisation and wears a Disability Assist Dog identification tag from that organisation.</li> </ul> <p>10.14.4 Should ensure, if a permit is required to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters, that the permit contains conditions to protect the values for which those lands and waters are held, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) owners/handlers must keep the dog under control at all times;</li> <li>b) dogs must not go into or be under public buildings, including huts;</li> <li>c) dogs must be certified by an approved avian aversion trainer where ground-dwelling or ground-nesting birds are present;</li> <li>d) dogs must be microchipped; and</li> <li>e) there must be compliance with any identified access arrangements between the Department and adjoining landowners.</li> </ul>

<b>Policies</b>	
<b>Dogs</b>	<p>10.14.5 Educate the community about the threats dogs can pose to conservation values.</p> <p>10.14.6 Work with territorial authorities to ensure consistency of dog control in areas containing protected wildlife and important wildlife habitats.</p> <p>10.14.7 Work with hunting clubs and Fish &amp; Game councils to encourage responsible hunting by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) promoting the use of high-quality hunting dogs;</li> <li>b) promoting the use of tracking collars on pig-hunting dogs;</li> <li>c) offering avian aversion training for dogs; and</li> <li>d) targeting the control of pest and wild animals at the priority sites identified in Appendix 7.</li> </ul>
<b>Horses and other animals</b>	<p>10.14.8 Should allow the use of horses (and pack animals) only on the formed roads, tracks and sites identified in Table 10.14.2.</p> <p>10.14.9 Should not permit livestock other than horses (and pack animals) in accordance with Policy 10.14.10 on public conservation lands and waters unless under a grazing and farming concession or management agreement.</p> <p>10.14.10 Should not permit any other types of animals, including pets, with the exception of dogs in accordance with Policies 10.14.1–10.14.7 (Dogs), on public conservation lands and waters.</p> <p>10.14.11 Liaise with dog owners and horse riders to identify opportunities to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) be involved in conservation programmes; and</li> <li>b) maintain the roads, tracks, routes or waterways they are permitted to use.</li> </ul> <p>10.14.12 Review dog and/or horse (and pack animal) use where monitoring shows adverse effects are occurring, in consultation with relevant user groups and the community.</p> <p>10.14.13 Identify sites, in accordance with policies 10.14.1 and 10.14.8, on the Department’s website, on signs and in other information to clarify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) where people are permitted to take dogs and horses (and pack animals) onto public conservation lands and waters; and</li> <li>b) what conditions apply to taking these animals, including the requirement to remain on the track or road formation at all times at sites where animals are restricted to identified tracks or roads.</li> </ul> <p>10.14.14 Undertake consultation with user groups, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs, other interested parties and the public when considering new opportunities for the use of dogs or horses (and pack animals) on public conservation lands and waters.</p>

Policies	
General	<p>10.14.15 Apply a range of criteria when considering new opportunities for the use of dogs or horses (and pack animals) on public conservation lands and waters, including whether:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the use is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, track or site is, or is proposed to be, located;</li> <li>the use is consistent with the visitor management zones shown on Map 3 and described in Appendix 14;</li> <li>adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the road, track or site and on natural, historic or cultural values can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;</li> <li>adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects and conflicts) on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;</li> <li>measures such as trial periods, restricted seasons, daylight use only, limits on numbers and one-way flow can be applied if necessary;</li> <li>facilities, including those associated with overnight use, can be provided if necessary;</li> <li>risks of fire and biosecurity (including the introduction or spread of pest plants and pathogens) can be avoided or otherwise carefully managed; and</li> <li>the ongoing management implications of providing dog and/or horse access (e.g. ongoing maintenance costs) are taken into account.</li> </ol>

**Table 10.14.1: Areas on public conservation lands and waters where dogs are allowed without a permit (see Policy 10.14.1)**

Place	Conservation unit	Walk/track	Criteria
Kaimai Mamaku Place	Kaimai Mamaku Conservation Park	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Karangakahe Gorge Tunnel Loop Walk</li> <li>Karangahake Tunnel to Owcharoa Falls Track</li> <li>Owcharoa to Victoria Battery / Waikino walk (excluding Victoria Battery walk)</li> <li>Crown Tram Walkway (excluding Windows Walk)</li> <li>Waitawheta Pipeline Walk</li> </ul>	Dogs on a leash only.



**Table 10.14.2: Areas on public conservation lands and waters where horses are allowed (see Policy 10.14.8)**

Place	Conservation unit	Walk/track	Criteria
Wairiki Place	Lake Rotoiti Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rotoma Bridle Track</li> </ul>	
	Lake Rotoma Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rotoma Bridle Track</li> </ul>	

## 10.15 Wild and game animals

Wild animals include goats, deer (*Cervus elaphus*, *Cervus nippon*, *Dama dama* and *Rusa unicolor*) and pigs that are not in captivity, including the whole or any part of the carcass, and are managed under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977.

The Minister of Conservation has responsibility for granting:

- concessions for commercial wild animal recovery operations involving aircraft (issued under the Conservation Act 1987);
- permits for commercial and recreational hunting; and
- permits for holding wild animals in captivity in safari parks or deer farms.

When deciding on applications for commercial wild animal recovery activities, the Minister must consider this CMS as well as any requirements or regulations promulgated under the Game Animal Council Act 2013. Other concessions may also be required under the Conservation Act 1987 – for example, aircraft access for recreational hunting.

Game animals are deer and wild pigs, including the whole or any part of the carcass, and are managed under the Game Animal Council Act 2013. Under this Act, the Minister may designate any species of game animal in a specified area on public conservation lands to be a ‘herd of special interest’ if the required criteria are met. A herd management plan is developed for each herd of special interest, setting out the objectives and strategies for the management of the herd such that the expected benefits are gained for hunting purposes. As at 24 April 2018, no herds of special interest were gazetted within the Bay of Plenty region.

The Game Animal Council has a range of functions associated with the hunting of game animals. The Department works with the Council to effectively manage game animals on public conservation lands and waters.

Policies	
10.15.1	Should grant concessions for deer, pig and goat carcass recovery and deer live capture on public conservation lands and waters only where: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>this is in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977; and</li> <li>the frequency, timing and location of the activity can be managed.</li> </ol>
10.15.2	Work with the Game Animal Council and others to facilitate the hunting of game animals on public conservation lands and waters in accordance with the Game Animal Council Act 2013 and the Wild Animal Control Act 1977.

# Part Four – Implementing this CMS





Pōhutukawa bloom. Photo: Neil Hutton Photography

## 11. Implementation, monitoring and reporting

This section provides a framework that allows the Department and the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board (the Board) to review progress in achieving the desired outcomes and objectives of this CMS.

This CMS is implemented by:

- applying business planning processes, where decisions are made about priorities and resourcing for departmental activities;
- making decisions on concessions and other authorisations;
- working with the Board;
- working with others; and
- advocating for conservation outcomes.

The Department reports to the Board at regular intervals on priorities for implementing the CMS and annually on progress in achieving the milestones and outcomes. The Board, in turn, reports annually to the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Additional monitoring is identified in the Department's Statements of Intent and annual reports. This reporting focuses particularly on matters related to the Department's intermediate outcomes, which form the basis for the policy direction included in Part One of this CMS.



The Department will also use this CMS to inform the Bay of Plenty region's annual business planning, which is used to plan ahead for the work the Department and others will do at a local level. It sets priorities for actions for the next financial year to achieve the milestones and long-term outcomes in this CMS.

The framework included in this section should be read alongside the Conservation General Policy 2005<sup>1</sup> and Conservation Act 1987, which provide direction on the monitoring, reporting and review of CMSs. The Conservation General Policy requires the CMS to include 'major milestones towards planned outcomes'. The Department and the Board may expand this monitoring and reporting framework during the life of this CMS in conjunction with tangata whenua and conservation stakeholders.

This CMS will have effect from the time of its approval by the New Zealand Conservation Authority until such time as it is formally amended or reviewed in full or in part under section 17H or 17I of the Conservation Act 1987.

---

<sup>1</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/about-us/our-policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy/](http://www.doc.govt.nz/about-us/our-policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy/)



## 11.1 Implementation, monitoring and reporting policies

- 11.1.1 Report, at least annually, to the Board on progress in achieving the regional milestones (Table 3.5 in Part One) and Place-based milestones and outcomes (Part Two) in this CMS.
- 11.1.2 May, with the agreement of the Board, expand the monitoring and reporting framework in Policy 11.1.1 to include:
- additional milestones or monitoring indicators;
  - reasons for delays or failures in implementation or achievement;
  - the nature and level of compliance/non-compliance with the provisions of this CMS;
  - an analysis of concession and statutory approval activity and activity monitoring; and
  - recommendations for improving the management of public conservation lands and waters in the Bay of Plenty region.
- 11.1.3 Seek the agreement of the Board when the Department considers an amendment or review of this CMS is necessary, including the contents of Appendices 2, 4, 5 and 10.
- 11.1.4 Seek the approval of the New Zealand Conservation Authority, on the recommendation of the Board, to any amendment to this CMS to correct a factual error, reflect changes in legislation, update information or provide clarification of a policy without altering its intent.
- 11.1.5 Report at least annually to the Board on changes, additions and updates to content, information and supporting links on the Bay of Plenty CMS page on the Department's website.



# Glossary

Any definitions from legislation or the Conservation General Policy 2005<sup>2</sup> are referenced in grey below and not repeated in full.

All Acts are available online at [www.legislation.govt.nz](http://www.legislation.govt.nz).

## ***actively conserved historic place***

A historically significant site that is managed by the Department to preserve and maintain its historic features.

## ***ahi tipua***

Volcanic fire.

***activity*** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

***aircraft*** (Civil Aviation Act 1990: section 2)

Includes, but is not limited to, the following types of aircraft: powered and non-powered; recreational and commercial; fixed-wing and rotary-wing; manned aircraft and remotely piloted aircraft systems; and any other aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

See also *aircraft, non-powered* and *aircraft, remotely piloted*.

## ***aircraft, control line model***

A model aircraft that is primarily controlled in flight by a single or multiple wire system operated by the person flying the aircraft and restricted to circular flights about a central point.

## ***aircraft, free-flight model***

A model aircraft with a maximum wing loading of 62 g/dm<sup>2</sup> (20 oz/ft<sup>2</sup>) that has an uncontrollable flight path once launched.

## ***aircraft, non-powered***

Any machine that is not driven by a powered device and can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the Earth. This is an inclusive definition that includes non-powered gliders, non-powered hang gliders, parachutes, balloons and any other non-powered aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

See also *aircraft*.

## ***aircraft, remotely piloted***

An unmanned aircraft that is piloted from a remote station, which:

- a) includes a radio-controlled model aircraft; but
- b) does not include a control line model aircraft or a free-flight model aircraft;

or as regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

## ***airstrip***

Any specified area of public conservation land that is specifically maintained for the landing and take-off of fixed-wing aircraft and may also be used by rotary-wing aircraft. It does not include a certified aerodrome as defined by the Conservation Act 1987 or an airport as defined by the Airport Authorities Act 1966.

## ***aku***

Cross boards.

***animal*** (Reserves Act 1977: section 2; National Parks Act 1980: section 2; Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

---

<sup>2</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/about-us/our-policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy/](http://www.doc.govt.nz/about-us/our-policies-and-plans/conservation-general-policy/)



**Aotearoa**

New Zealand.

**archaeological site** (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

**at risk (species)**

Taxa that do not meet the criteria for any of the 'threatened' species categories but are declining (although buffered by a large total population size and/or a slow decline rate), biologically scarce, recovering from a previously threatened status or survive only in relict populations. (New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual 2008<sup>3</sup>).

**atua**

Gods.

**authorisation** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**authorised**

Approved in a statutory process.

**awa**

River, stream.

**Backcountry destination**

Destination that provides for more challenging adventures, including popular walks and tramps, within the body of a large-scale natural setting.

**Bioregion**

A biogeographic region, an area constituting a natural ecological community with characteristic flora, fauna, and environmental conditions and bounded by natural rather than artificial borders.

**biodiversity** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**biosecurity** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

The Department has functions that it performs under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

**building** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**bylaw**

A rule made by the Minister of Conservation under section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980 or section 106 of the Reserves Act 1977. Bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves, whereas regulations may apply to reserves and conservation areas.

**climate change**

A change in climate that is attributed directly or indirectly to human activity altering the composition of the global atmosphere (United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change: Article 1<sup>4</sup>).

**commercial hunting** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**community (conservation)**

Any individual or group (whether statutory or non-statutory, formal or informal, commercial or non-commercial) with an interest in a particular conservation issue.

**concession**

A lease, licence, permit or easement that is granted under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987, section 49 of the National Parks Act 1980, section 59A of the Reserves Act 1977, section 22 of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 or section 14AA of the Wildlife Act, or any activity authorised by the concession document.

**concessionaire**

A person granted a concession by the Minister for Conservation for a lease, licence, permit or easement.

<sup>3</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/science-and-technical/sap244.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/science-and-technical/sap244.pdf)

<sup>4</sup> <https://unfccc.int/resource/ccsites/zimbab/conven/text/art01.htm>

*conservation* (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

***conservation board***

Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. Their primary functions and powers are set out in sections 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987 and section 30 of the National Parks Act 1980. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of CMSs and national park management plans for their areas, approving conservation management plans (e.g. for conservation parks), and advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority and Director-General of Conservation on conservation matters of importance in their area. They also have an important conservation advocacy role. The relevant conservation board for this CMS is the Bay of Plenty Conservation Board.

***Conservation General Policy***

A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Conservation Act 1987, Wildlife Act 1953, Marine Reserves Act 1971, Reserves Act 1977, Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by the Department, including the preparation of CMSs, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans.

***conservation legislation***

A collective term that applies to the statutes administered by the Department, including the Conservation Act 1987 (and the legislation listed in Schedule 1 of that Act), the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.

***conservation management***

Any activity that is carried out by the Minister or Director-General of Conservation (and their contractors and authorised agents) in the exercising of his or her functions, duties or powers under conservation legislation.

*conservation management plan* (Conservation Act 1987: section 17E)

*conservation management strategy (CMS)* (Conservation Act 1987: section 17D)

***Conservation Protocol***

An agreement between the Department and a PSGE that promotes working relationships and participation in areas of decision-making.

***conservation stakeholders***

For the purposes of this CMS, include regional councils, territorial authorities, private landowners, community groups and the public.

***control line model aircraft***

See *aircraft, control line model*.

*cultural* (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

*cumulative effect* (**Resource Management Act 1991**: section 3)

*customary use* (Conservation General Policy 2005)

***Deed of Recognition***

A document that requires the Department to consult with a PSGE and have regard for the PSGE's special association with identified areas for which they have a Statement of Association. It may also specify a PSGE's input into the management of those areas. Deeds are administered by the Department.

**Department, the**

The Department of Conservation.

**destination management**

A programme aimed at increasing the number of people enjoying public conservation lands and waters. It focuses the Department on five key areas for success: understanding what people want; delivering quality experiences; optimising resources; working with others; and improving marketing and promotion. Destinations are geographic areas and/or groups of facilities that are the focus of a single typical visitor trip and are categorised into Icon, Gateway, Local Treasure and Backcountry destinations. Destination management is the coordinated management of all the elements that make up a destination, including its values, attractions, people, infrastructure, access and how it is marketed.

**Director-General**

The Director-General of Conservation.

**disability assist dog (Dog Control Act 1996: section 2)**

**ecological corridor**

An area of vegetation that provides a connection and potentially allows the movement of plants and animals between two habitats. Ecological corridors do not have to be linear and/or physically connected, just close enough so that plants and animals can disperse along them.

**ecological integrity (Conservation General Policy 2005)**

**ecosystem (Conservation General Policy 2005)**

An 'indigenous ecosystem' is comprised of indigenous species.

**ecosystem services (Conservation General Policy 2005)**

**effect (Conservation Act 1987: section 2 and Resource Management Act 1991: section 3)**

**electric power-assisted pedal cycle (e-bike)**

A pedal cycle to which one or more auxiliary electric propulsion motors are attached with a combined maximum power output of 300 W or less.

**encampment (Conservation General Policy 2005)**

**endemic (General Policy for National Parks 2005)**

**exceptional circumstances**

Circumstances well outside the normal range of circumstances. They do not have to be unique or very rare, but they do need to be truly an exception rather than circumstances that are regularly or often encountered.

**facilities (Conservation General Policy 2005)**

**fish (Fisheries Act 1996: section 2)**

**Fish & Game council (Conservation Act 1987: section 26Q (1))**

**fishery (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)**

**fixed anchor**

A device, such as a bolt or piton, placed permanently into rock to facilitate climbing and caving activities.

**four-wheel-drive track**

A road that can be traversed by a four-wheel-drive vehicle capable of handling conditions including the grade and side slopes, width, surface material, waterway fords, entry and exit angles to fords and depressions, and seasonal snow and ice without causing adverse effects to the adjoining areas or the road. The road can be retained at this four-wheel-drive standard through maintenance and managed traffic densities and/or seasonal closures and can be shared with other vehicles, including trail bikes and mountain bikes.

See also *road*.



**free-flight model aircraft**

See *aircraft, free-flight model*.

**freshwater fish** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**game** (Wildlife Act 1953: section 2)

**game animal** (Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4)

**Gateway destination**

A destination that helps introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allows them to learn about conservation. These destinations may provide for a diverse range of activities and include many traditional camping and tramping destinations.

**General Policy for National Parks**

A policy prepared under section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980 to provide unified policy for the implementation of that Act.

**habitat** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**hapū**

Kinship group, clan, tribe, subtribe.

**herenga**

Lashings.

**historic and cultural heritage** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**historic place** (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

**historic resource** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**hiwirua**

Second hull.

**hiwitahi**

First hull.

**hoe urungi**

Steering guide.

**hover**

Aircraft flight at a constant height and position over a surface.

**Icon destination**

A high-profile, popular destination that underpins national and international tourism and provides memorable visitor experiences in New Zealand.

**indigenous (species)**

Plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings, vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand, as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. The words 'indigenous' and 'native' have the same meaning in this CMS.

**integrated conservation management** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS)<sup>5</sup>**

An international, non-governmental organisation of heritage professionals who are engaged in the conservation of places of cultural heritage value and dedicated to the conservation of the world's historic monuments and sites. ICOMOS acts as an advisory body to the World Heritage Committee.

**International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter, Te Pūmanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki i Ngā Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe<sup>6</sup>**

A set of guidelines on cultural heritage conservation produced by ICOMOS New Zealand. The New Zealand Charter is widely used in the New Zealand heritage

<sup>5</sup> [www.icomos.org.nz](http://www.icomos.org.nz)

<sup>6</sup> [www.icomos.org.nz/charters](http://www.icomos.org.nz/charters)

sector and forms a recognised benchmark for conservation standards and practice. It is used by central government ministries and departments, by local bodies in district plans and heritage management, and by practitioners as guiding principles.

**interpretation**

Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural, historic or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media in a way that stimulates interest in, an increased understanding of and support for conservation.

*intrinsic value* (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**iwi**

Extended kinship group, tribe.

**kai**

Food, meal.

**kaimoana**

Seafood, shellfish.

**kāinga**

Home, address, residence, village, settlement, habitation, habitat, dwelling.

*kaitiaki* (Conservation General Policy 2005)

*kaitiakitanga* (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**kātao**

Water.

**kawenata**

Covenant, testament, charter, contract, agreement, treaty.

**kōiwi**

Human bone, corpse.

**kōkōwai**

Red ochre.

**kōwhaiwhai**

Painted scroll ornamentation.

**landscape-scale pest control**

A term commonly used to refer to action that covers a large spatial scale, usually addressing a range of ecosystem processes, conservation objectives and land uses.

*livestock* (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**Local Treasure destination**

A locally important, vehicle-accessible location that provides recreation opportunities for, and grows connections with, nearby communities.

**māhaki**

To be inoffensive, humble and tolerant.

**mahi**

Work, job, employment, trade (work), practice, occupation, activity, exercise, operation, function.

**mahinga kai**

Garden, cultivation, food-gathering place.

**maimai**

Hunters' hut.

*mana* (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**mana whenua**

Territorial rights, power from the land, authority over land or territory, jurisdiction over land or territory.

***manaaki***

To support, take care of, give hospitality to, protect, look out for.

***marine mammal*** (**Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978**: section 2)

***marine protected area*** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

Includes marine reserves.

***marine reserve*** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

***mātaitai reserve***

A management tool created under Part IX of the Fisheries Act 1996 to recognise use and management practices of Māori in the exercising of non-commercial fishing rights. Tangata whenua may apply to the Minister of Fisheries to establish a mātaitai reserve on a traditional fishing ground for the purpose of recognising and providing for customary management practices and food gathering.

***mātauranga Māori*** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

***mātauranga-a-hapū***

Subtribal knowledge.

***mātauranga-a-iwi***

Tribal knowledge.

***mātauranga-a-whanau***

Family knowledge.

***mātauranga taiao***

Māori knowledge, wisdom and understanding of the environment and natural world.

***maunga***

Mountain, mount, peak.

***mauri*** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

***milestone***

A specific action that is a measurable step towards achieving an objective or outcome.

***mining*** (**Crown Minerals Act 1991**: section 2)

***moana***

Sea, ocean, large lake.

***motorised watercraft***

A vessel or other watercraft that:

- a) is used on or in water; and
- b) is not powered solely by hand, sail or a combination of hand and sail.

***motor vehicle*** (includes motorised vehicle) (**Land Transport Act 1998**: section 2)

Does not include any electric power-assisted pedal cycle.

Note: Any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes) taken onto public conservation lands and waters must be registered and/or licensed where it is required to be registered and/or licensed under the Land Transport Act 1998.

***motu***

Island.

***mountain bike***

A non-powered bicycle that can be used off formed roads.

***native (species)***

See *indigenous (species)*.

***natural*** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

***natural character*** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

***natural quiet*** (Conservation General Policy 2005)



**natural resources** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**natural state** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**ngahere**

Bush, forest.

**non-motorised watercraft**

A vessel or other watercraft that:

- a) is used on or in water; and
- b) is powered solely by hand, sail or a combination of hand and sail.

**outcome** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**overlay classification** (Clauses for Standard Elements of Treaty Settlement Bills 2015)

**pā**

Fortified village, fort, stockade.

**pae maunga**

Mountain range.

**pakiwaitara**

Legend, story, folklore.

**participation** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**partnership** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**pest** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**Place** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

For the purposes of this CMS, Places include the Kaimai Mamaku Place, Waiariki Place, Whirinaki Surrounds Place, Eastern Catchments Place, Coastal and Marine Place, and Te Mauri o te Wai Place.

**Post Settlement Governance Entity (PSGE)**

A PSGE needs to be set up before a Treaty settlement becomes final and is made law. The group will represent the claimant group after the settlement is complete and will decide how to manage the redress package for the benefit of everyone.  
[www.govt.nz/browse/history-culture-and-heritage/treaty-of-waitangi-claims/](http://www.govt.nz/browse/history-culture-and-heritage/treaty-of-waitangi-claims/)

**pou**

Pole, pillar.

**preservation** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**priority ecosystem/management unit**

An ecosystem unit that has been identified through the Department's natural heritage prioritisation processes as being one of the most effective locations to work to ensure that a representative range of ecosystems is protected.

**private accommodation** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**protected area** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**protection** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**public conservation lands and waters**

Lands and waters administered by the Department for their respective legislative purpose, including the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources of those areas covered by this CMS. Reserves administered by other agencies are not included in this definition.

**puna**

Spring (of water), well, pool.

**rāhui**

To put in place a temporary ritual prohibition, closed season, ban or reserve. Traditionally, a rāhui was placed on an area, resource or stretch of water as a conservation measure or as a means of social and political control for a variety

of reasons, which can be grouped into three main categories: pollution by tapu, conservation and politics. A rāhui is a device for separating people from tapu things.

**recreational freshwater fishery** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**regional council** (Local Government Act 2002: Section 5 (1))

The regional councils within the Bay of Plenty CMS region are the Hawke's Bay Regional Council, Waikato Regional Council and Bay of Plenty Regional Council.

**regulation (conservation)**

A rule made by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, under the relevant section of the conservation legislation.

**related facilities**

Any structure or piece of equipment that is used in conjunction or association with accommodation. Examples include garages, outhouses and outdoor showers.

**Relationship Agreement (Conservation)**

An agreement that outlines how the Department will work and engage with a PSGE.

**Relationship Statement**

A commitment to a post-settlement relationship between the PSGE and the Department.

**relict**

A population of a species whose distribution has been severely modified and disturbed so that only dispersed fragments remain.

**remotely piloted aircraft**

See *aircraft, remotely piloted*.

**reserve** (Reserves Act 1977: section 2)

Includes recreation, historic, scenic, nature, scientific, government purpose and local purpose reserves.

**restoration** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**road** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

A road may or may not pass over a defined legal road.

See also *four-wheel-drive road*.

**rohe** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**rongōa**

Remedy, medicine.

**roto**

Lake.

**site** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**species** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**sports fish** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**Statement of Association**

Statements of a PSGE's particular cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association with identified areas.

**Statement of Intent (SOI)**

A document that sets out a rolling 4-year direction for a government department. Its primary purpose is to enable Ministers, select committees, and the central and audit agencies that support them to assess the performance of government departments.

**structure** (Resource Management Act 1991: section 2)

**tangata whenua** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**taonga** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**tapatapa whenua**

Naming landscapes after deeds and events.

**tapu**

Sacred, prohibited, restricted.

**taunaha whenua**

Naming landscapes to establish ownership.

**te ao Māori**

The Māori world view.

**te hauora o te taiao**

The health of the environment.

**te hauora o te tangata**

The health of the people.

**te hauora o te wai**

The health of the waterbody.

**territorial authority** (Local Government Act 2002: Section 5(1))

A territorial authority is defined under the Local Government Act 2002 as a city council or a district council. The territorial authorities in the Bay of Plenty CMS region are the Kawerau District Council, Rotorua Lakes Council, Western Bay of Plenty District Council, Tauranga City Council, South Waikato District Council, Matamata-Piako District Council, Opotiki District Council, Hauraki District Council, Whakatane District Council, Wairoa District Council, Hastings District Council, Taupō District Council and Gisborne District Council.

**te taiao**

The environment.

**threatened (species)**

Includes all taxa categorised as 'Nationally Critical', 'Nationally Endangered' or 'Nationally Vulnerable' under the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008.<sup>7</sup>

**tikanga** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**tīpuna**

Ancestors, grandparents.

**Tiritiri o Waitangi**

Treaty of Waitangi.

**Tohu Whenua**

Landmark.

**tūpuna awa**

Ancestral river.

**under control (dogs)**

- a) Not causing a nuisance or danger to:
  - (i) people; or
  - (ii) any indigenous fauna; and
- b) able to respond immediately and appropriately to controls including a leash, voice commands, hand signals or whistles.

**urupā**

Burial ground.

<sup>7</sup> [www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/science-and-technical/sap244.pdf](http://www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/science-and-technical/sap244.pdf)



**utilities**

Structures and infrastructure that provide an essential public service including, but not limited to, telecommunications; energy generation and transmission; sewerage; water supply and flood control; oil and gas; roads and airstrips; and hydrological and weather stations.

**utu**

Reciprocation.

**vehicle** (Land Transport Act 1998: section 2)

**visitor**

For the purpose of this CMS, visitors are people using areas and facilities managed by the Department. They include adults and children from both New Zealand and overseas, and they may arrange their own visit or use the services of a concessionaire.

**wāhi taonga**

Special place.

**wāhi tapu** (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

**waiariki**

Hot spring, thermal pool.

**waiata**

Song, chant, psalm.

**wairua**

Spirit, soul.

**waka**

Canoe.

**waka ama**

Outrigger canoeing.

**waka hourua**

Double-hulled canoe.

**warranted officer** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**water conservation order** (Resource Management Act 1991: section 200)

Recognises the outstanding amenity or intrinsic values of waterbodies.

**wetland** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**whakaauaha**

Innovation.

**whakapapa**

Genealogy, genealogical table, lineage, descent.

**whakawhanaungatanga**

Building relationships.

**whanau**

Extended family, family group.

**whenua**

Land.

**whenua rāhui**

Reserve, reserve land.

**wild animal** (Wild Animal Control Act 1977: section 2)

**wildlife** (Wildlife Act 1953: section 2)

New Zealand Government